

Hawke's Bay Conservancy



Conservation Management Strategy

(Volume I)

for Hawke's Bay Conservancy

1994-2004



Department of Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai

Cover Photo

Scattered cabbage trees (*Cordyline australis*) dot a Hawke's Bay lowland farm, with a remnant of native forest in the background. The lowland and coastal areas of the Conservancy are highly modified. This CMS has identified the protection of remaining natural areas as a high management priority.



HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

Volume I

Prepared and published by the
Department of Conservation
Hawke's Bay Conservancy
P O Box 644
Napier

October 1994

FOREWORD

A conservation management strategy (CMS) is a statutory document which implements general policies and establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural (including land and species) and historic resources. The conduct of some activities on land administered by the Department can only take place by and in accordance with a CMS. Those preparing regional and district plans must have regard to any relevant CMS. It must be noted however, that a CMS is generally a statement of intent, and does not over-ride the provisions of legislation, general policy and agreements.

The Hawke's Bay Conservancy CMS has been prepared in accordance with Part IIIA of the Conservation Act. It provides a statement of intent for the long-term direction in which the Conservancy will proceed, both in management of lands managed by the Department, and on its advocacy functions for protection of natural and historic resources generally.

This CMS has been developed in consultation with the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board and the people of the region, whose assistance is acknowledged. The ongoing assistance and enthusiasm of these local people is vital if the challenges posed by this CMS are to be met.

A draft CMS was notified in June 1993 and an invitation extended to all persons or organizations to submit their comments by 6 September 1993. Prior to and following release of this document public meetings were held throughout the Conservancy, and there was separate consultation with iwi, local authorities and user groups.

A total of 53 written submissions were received on the draft CMS by the closing date for submissions. Thirteen persons or organizations asked to be heard in support of their submissions and did so at a hearing attended by representatives of the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board and the Department.

After giving due consideration to all submissions and other public opinion, the Director-General prepared a summary of them and revised the draft. These documents were presented to the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board for its consideration and approval prior to referral to the New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA) in April 1994.

The NZCA considered the CMS and referred it to the Minister of Conservation. After having regard for the recommendations of the Minister of Conservation, the NZCA approved this CMS for Hawke's Bay Conservancy on 19 September 1994.



J K Guthrie
Chairperson
New Zealand Conservation Authority
P O Box 10-420
WELLINGTON

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I

<u>Section One</u>	<u>Introduction</u>	Page
1.1	Introduction to the Conservation Management Strategy (CMS)	1
1.1.1	What is a Conservation Management Strategy	1
1.1.2	How to use this Document	3
1.1.3	The CMS Process	4
1.2	Hawke's Bay Conservancy	6
1.2.1	Introduction	6
1.2.1.1	Conservancy Boundaries	6
1.2.1.2	Physical Description	6
1.2.1.3	A History of Change	6
1.2.1.4	Areas Managed by the Department	6
1.2.1.5	Natural and Historic Values	7
1.3	A Vision for Conservation in Hawke's Bay	7
<u>Section Two</u>	<u>Places in Hawke's Bay Conservancy</u>	8
2.1	Mountainlands	9
2.2	Tarawera	20
2.3	Maungaharuru	28
2.4	Lowlands	39
2.5	Coastal	57
2.6	Marine	74
<u>Section Three</u>	<u>Functional Objectives and Implementation Provisions</u>	79
3.1	Resolution of Treaty Issues	82
3.2	Unprotected Areas	84
3.2.1	Introduction	84
3.2.2	Protected Natural Areas Programme (PNAP)	84
3.2.3	Historic Resources	88
3.2.4	Marine Reserves	90

3.3	Statutory Advocacy and Coastal Responsibilities	92
3.3.1	Introduction	92
3.3.2	Statutory Advocacy	93
3.3.3	Coastal Responsibilities	94
3.3.3.1	Coastal Advocacy	95
3.3.3.2	Marine Fisheries Advocacy	96
3.3.3.3	Coastal Resources Inventory (CRI)	97
3.4	Protection of Lands Managed by the Department	99
3.4.1	Introduction	99
3.4.2	Management of Historic Resources	100
3.4.3	Fire Prevention and Control	103
3.4.4	Animal Pest Control	105
3.4.5	Plant Pest Control	109
3.4.6	Restoration	114
3.4.7	Survey/Monitoring/Research	116
3.4.8	Wildlife Sanctuaries, Wildlife Refuges and Wildlife Management Reserves	118
3.5	Protected Species	120
3.5.1	Introduction	120
3.5.2	Protected Animals (Birds)	120
3.5.3	Protected Animals (Other Species)	123
3.5.4	Threatened Plants	126
3.5.4.1	Identification of Threatened species	126
3.5.4.2	Priorities for Management/Protection	127
3.5.5	Marine Mammal Protection	130
3.5.6	Convention in Trade and Endangered Species CITES and Protected Species Permitting	132
3.6	Commercial and Extractive Uses of Areas Managed by the Department	134
3.6.1	Commercial Recreation and Tourism Use of Areas Managed by the Department	134
3.6.2	Recreational (Non-Commercial) Use of Areas Managed by the Department	137
3.6.3	Non-Recreation/Tourism Leases, Licences and Statutory Consents	138
3.6.3.1	Grazing	138
3.6.3.2	Bee Keeping	140
3.6.3.3	Telecommunication Systems	140
3.6.3.4	Easements	141
3.6.3.5	Bach Sites and Private Houses	142
3.6.3.6	Prospecting, Exploration and Mining	143
3.6.3.7	Power Generation	145
3.6.3.8	Defence/Police Use of Lands Managed by the Department	146
3.6.4	Taking of Plants and Animals	147

3.7	Land Administration	150
3.8	Recreation Opportunities - Access, Facilities, Services	152
3.8.1	Introduction	152
3.8.2	Recreational Use	155
3.8.2.1	Visitor Access - General	155
3.8.2.2	Aircraft Access	157
3.8.2.3	Off Road Vehicles	158
3.8.2.4	Domestic Animals	159
3.8.2.5	Organised Club or Public Events	161
3.8.2.6	Environmental Care	162
3.8.2.7	Visitor Health and Safety	163
3.8.3	Facilities	165
3.9	Public Awareness	167
3.9.1	Introduction	167
3.9.2	Public Liaison	167
3.9.3	Education	168
3.9.4	Community Involvement/Volunteers	169
3.9.5	News Media	170
3.9.6	Public Information and Publications	170
3.9.7	Visitor Programmes	171
3.9.8	Interpretation (signs)	171
3.10	Liaison and Planning Matters	173
3.10.1	Management Planning	173
3.10.2	Consultation	174
3.10.2.1	Consultation with Tangata Whenua	175
3.10.3	Servicing of Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board	177
3.10.4	Liaison with Fish and Game Councils	178
3.10.5	Liaison with the New Zealand Historic Places Trust	180
3.11	Compliance and Law Enforcement	181
3.12	Efficient Use of Resources in the Workplace	182
<u>Section Four</u>	<u>Strategic Directions</u>	184
<u>Section Five</u>	<u>Appendices</u>	
	<u>Glossary</u>	
	<u>Bibliography</u>	

Acknowledgements

Maps

Map 1	Hawke's Bay Conservancy
Map 2	"Places" in Hawke's Bay Conservancy
Map 3	Ahuriri Estuary - Areas Managed by the Department of Conservation
Map 4	Cape Kidnappers - Reserves Boundaries
Map 5	Ecological Regions and Districts
Map 6	Local Authority Boundaries

VOLUME II

Section Six

Maps

A series of twenty maps covering the Conservancy at a scale of 1:125,000, showing all areas managed by the Department, including walkways, wildlife refuges, protected private lands and conservation covenants. Each area has a number which allows cross referencing to specific land inventory sheets (see Section 7, below).

Section Seven

Land Inventory

The inventory gives details of every piece of land managed by the Department. Each piece is classed as Mountainland or Tarawera etc to allow cross referencing back to the "place" section (Section 2, Volume I).

It also gives details of protected private lands, conservation covenants, wildlife refuges and walkways in the Conservancy.

Section One
(Introduction to the CMS)



SECTION ONE - INTRODUCTION

Section 1.1 INTRODUCTION TO THE CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

1.1.1 What is a Conservation Management Strategy

Section 17D(2) of the Conservation Act, inserted by the Conservation Law Reform Act 1990, introduced a requirement for the Department to prepare Conservation Management Strategies for all areas managed by the Department and all natural and historic resources within its care.

The purpose of a Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) as stated in the Conservation Act, is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the:

- Wildlife Act 1953
- Marine Reserves Act 1971
- Reserves Act 1977
- Wild Animal Control Act 1977
- Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978
- National Parks Act 1980
- NZ Walkways Act 1990
- Conservation Act 1987

and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. It must identify and describe all public lands managed by the Department and cover the range of functions of the Department.

Under Section 4 of the Conservation Act the Department is required to give effect to the Treaty of Waitangi in its administration of the Act. Summaries of the Principles of the Treaty, as defined by the Waitangi Tribunal and the Court of Appeal, are included as Appendix One. Also included is a Government statement on the principles for Crown action on the Treaty of Waitangi.

Until the Conservation Law Reform Act of 1990 the Department was obliged to prepare separate management plans for each of its land units under the Conservation, Reserves, Wildlife and National Parks Acts. These plans were largely unrelated to one another, and did not provide an overall sense of direction for the Department's activities. The CMS, by examining issues over the whole Conservancy, provides a broad overview and sets an overall direction for the Conservancy's activities.

In practical terms a CMS is a document which sets out to answer the following questions:

- What are the Conservancy's conservation objectives for the next ten years and beyond?
- What are the priorities?
- How will they be achieved?

It is both a practical working document for managers and a guide to the public about how the Department will manage its natural and historic resources in the future. It will encourage co-ordination and integration of the Department's functional activities (eg, protected species, fire suppression), provide a mechanism for resolving conflicts and guide the allocation of Departmental resources, in association with corporate and business planning, to ensure that resources are used effectively and efficiently. While it is a practical working document it will also provide a vision for conservation in Hawke's Bay beyond its ten year timespan. This vision has been developed taking into account the aspirations of the Hawke's Bay community as expressed at public meetings and in written or verbal submissions.

The CMS covers all areas managed by the Department. These areas are identified individually in the Land Inventory and maps in Volume II of this CMS, and also outlined in Section 2 of Volume I, in accordance with Section 17D(7) of the Conservation Act.

The CMS covers management of protected species on all lands, regardless of tenure. It also deals with marine mammal protection, wild animal control, protection of fresh water fisheries, and other issues which affect natural and historic resources in the Conservancy, both on and off lands managed by the Department. In addition, it highlights areas which have high natural or historic values but are currently unprotected, and discusses in some cases how protection could be achieved. The CMS also sets out the Department's general priorities for increasing public awareness of conservation issues, and for interpretation of natural and historic values on lands managed by the Department.

It also sets out directions and priorities for conservation management and provides guidance for day-to-day decision-making. It achieves complete management planning coverage for all areas managed by the Department, although more detailed conservation management plans may still be required for some areas in the future (see Section 3.10.1).

The general principles which apply throughout this document and guide the Department's work priorities are as follows:

- (i) Protection of natural and historic resources is the highest priority.
- (ii) Protection of native plants and animals cannot be achieved in isolation - the natural environment as a whole must be sustained and enhanced. This requires the co-operation and enthusiasm of the whole community.
- (iii) Fostering recreation on lands managed by the Department is provided for subject to the overriding requirement for protection¹.

¹ In recreation reserves this overriding requirement for protection may not apply.

The CMS will be linked to the preparation of the annual Business Plan for the Conservancy. The Business Plan determines the relative allocation of resources between the different activities of the Department for each business year. An important function of the Business Plan is to ensure the objectives and policies in this CMS are implemented.

1.1.2 How to Use this Document

This CMS has two volumes. Both volumes should be read together.

Volume I contains five major sections.

Section One introduces the CMS and explains its purpose and scope. It also gives a brief overview of the Conservancy by outlining its physical characteristics, its history, and its natural values. It finishes by describing a vision for the future of conservation in the Conservancy.

Section Two divides the Conservancy into six major geographic areas and discusses these in some detail, establishing broad objectives for the management of the natural values present.

Section Three part covers all the functional outputs which are the basis of the Department's day-to-day management. This section establishes broad policy objectives and outlines in some detail implementation provisions to realise those objectives. It also contains several objectives and implementation provisions of a more administrative nature.

Section Four is an analysis of the results of this strategic planning exercise. It summarises the key messages from the process of setting geographic and functional objectives and provides guidance on the priorities for conservation work over the next ten years. This section, in essence, provides a brief summary of all the information contained in this CMS, and could be referred to for this purpose.

Section Five contains the appendices.

Volume II has two main sections.

The first section (Section Six) contains the maps, which, at a scale of 1:125,000 identify all areas managed by the Department within the boundaries of this strategy, plus walkways, wildlife refuges, protected private land agreements and conservation covenants on private lands. The second section (Section Seven) contains inventory sheets which describe in some detail, every separate land unit which has been identified on the maps.

As a user of this document, you are likely to have an interest in either a particular place (eg Otatara Pa Historic Reserve, Monckton Scenic Reserve) or in a particular functional output of the Department (eg wild animal control, recreational tracks).

If you are interested in a particular place, you should use the CMS as follows:

- (i) Look for the alphabetical listing of all areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy, at the start of Section Seven
- (ii) Beside the place will be a number;
- (iii) That number refers to the land inventory sheet number which you can refer to for full details about the individual piece of land;

- (iv) The sheet states what map in Section Six the particular piece of land is located on;
- (v) In the top right hand corner of the land inventory sheet there is also a note stating in which of the six broad geographic areas the individual piece of land lies;
- (vi) You can now go to Section Two of Volume I to look at the discussion on broad management objectives for that place.

For example, if you are interested in Monckton Scenic Reserve:

- (i) its land inventory number is 80038;
- (ii) its map reference, as indicated in the land inventory sheet, is U22 905325;
- (iii) if you turn to map U22, in Section 6, you can locate the reserve;
- (iv) the inventory sheet also tells you it is located in the lowlands;
- (v) you can then obtain more information on the lowland area in general by referring to Section 2.4.

If you are interested in a particular functional output of the Department, it will be listed in the detailed index for Section Three of Volume I.

It is important, you do not the consider geographic places in isolation from the functional objectives, as these functional objectives often have generic application across a wide range of areas.

1.1.3 The CMS Process

This CMS has been prepared by the Hawke's Bay Conservancy of the Department of Conservation in association with the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board. There has been liaison with other Conservancies and Conservation Boards which border the Hawke's Bay Conservancy.

Conservation and recreation groups and other interested persons were notified that the CMS was being prepared and extensive formal and informal consultation has taken place prior to and during its preparation. This input from the community has been invaluable and the aspirations of local people are reflected in the contents contained herein.

Iwi were also involved with preparation of the CMS. The directions outlined in it are intended to recognise Maori cultural perspectives and serve as a basis for ongoing discussions and decision-making to achieve effective conservation management.

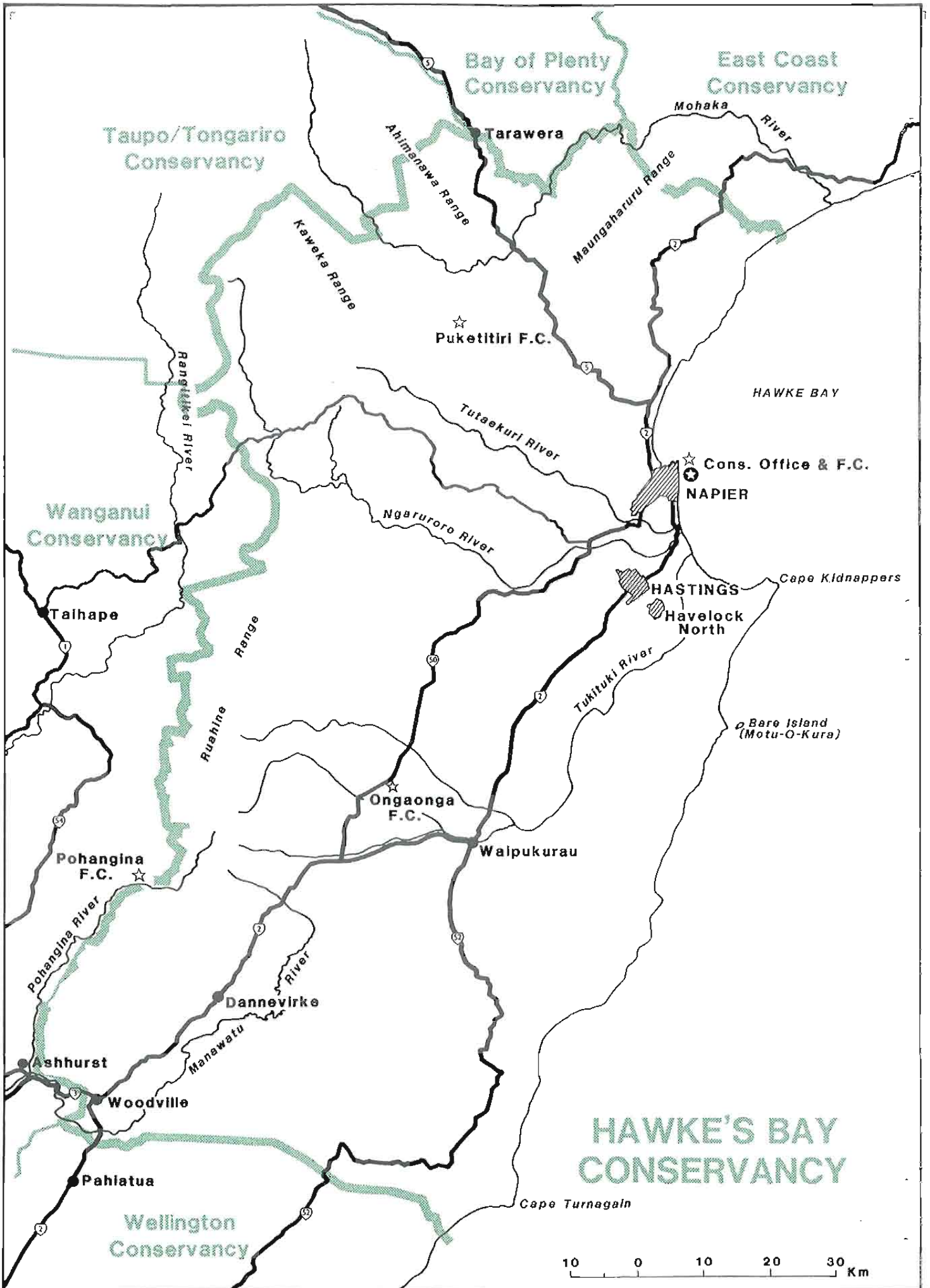
During 1992, before preparation of the draft CMS, seventeen public meetings were held throughout the Conservancy. There was also separate consultation with Iwi, user groups and local authorities.

Following public notification of the draft CMS, in June 1993, a further round of public consultation took place. The public were invited to submit their comments on the draft and 60 written submissions were received.

In September 1993 twelve groups or individuals spoke in support of their submissions, and Te Runanganui O Ngati Kahungunu was heard, at its request, at a later date.

Following this, the written and verbal comments received on the draft CMS were summarised, and the document revised by the Department in light of these comments. It was then considered by the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board, and finally referred to the NZ Conservation Authority for its approval, in accordance with the procedures in Section 17F of the Conservation Act.

Monitoring and review will be an integral part of the implementation of this CMS. The details and contents of future annual business plans must recognise and have regard to it also.



Section 1.2 HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY

1.2.1 Introduction

For administrative purposes the Department of Conservation in New Zealand is structured into fourteen regional "conservancies". Each conservancy has the responsibility for strategic and operational planning, and for day-to-day operational management for conservation within its region. This CMS covers the entire area of the Hawke's Bay Conservancy.

1.2.1.1 Conservancy Boundaries

The Hawke's Bay Conservancy area is shown on Map One. It extends from the Waikari River in the north, to south of Cape Turnagain. In the west the Conservancy boundary extends beyond the western flanks of the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks. These boundaries are, however, only administrative boundaries for the Department, and close co-operation and shared staffing situations exist between Hawke's Bay and adjoining conservancies.

1.2.1.2 Physical Description

Hawke's Bay is a distinctive part of New Zealand with a wide variety of climates, habitats and natural features. It has a relatively young landscape. To the west are the axial ranges of the North Island, composed of hard but fractured greywacke, with younger rolling hill country and plains extending towards the sea. This landscape is soft and eroding, with deeply entrenched streams in the hill country and braided rivers meandering through the plains. There is an exposed coast largely devoid of natural inlets, but with a variety of rocky reefs, gravel and sand beaches.

1.2.1.3 A History of Change

Prior to human settlement, almost the entire lowlands and hill country of Hawke's Bay would have been covered in dense forests rich in birdlife. Modification of the vegetation cover of the land started with early Maori and continued with the arrival of the Pakeha. The presence of people in the landscape has left a rich legacy of human history and important sites, but there has been an unfortunate legacy of almost total modification of natural ecosystems east of the main ranges. Little remains of the original forests that would have covered most of the land, and other natural habitats, such as wetlands, have also been greatly diminished and modified.

1.2.1.4 Areas Managed by the Department

The areas managed by the Department of Conservation reflect both the physical makeup of the Conservancy and its history. The rugged mountain ranges to the west contain the only sizeable remnants of natural vegetation. The rolling hill country has a reasonable number of significant, although not large, remnants, while further east on the plains, such areas are small and scattered.

Most of the fertile and accessible land has been converted to agriculture and horticulture, leaving an impoverished natural inheritance for future generations. There are 237 parcels of land administered by the Department totalling 172177 hectares. Of this 500 hectares are controlled and managed by other organizations and

153163 hectares or 89 percent of the areas managed by the Department are included in the two forest parks. The areas managed by the Department include, conservation areas, reserves, forest parks and marginal strips. (See Glossary for definitions of these areas). There are also some 523 hectares on private or state owned enterprise lands protected by conservation covenants or protected land agreements, and an unconfirmed number of QEII Trust Covenants on private land.

1.2.1.5 Natural and Historic Values

Despite the extensive modification of many areas, the Conservancy contains a great diversity of landscapes, habitats, plants, and animals, and areas of high natural and historic value remain. It is to assess those values, highlight important values that remain unprotected or vulnerable, and plan for their future management that this conservation management strategy is written.

Section 1.3 A VISION FOR CONSERVATION IN HAWKE'S BAY

A Conservancy whose people understand and care for their environment.

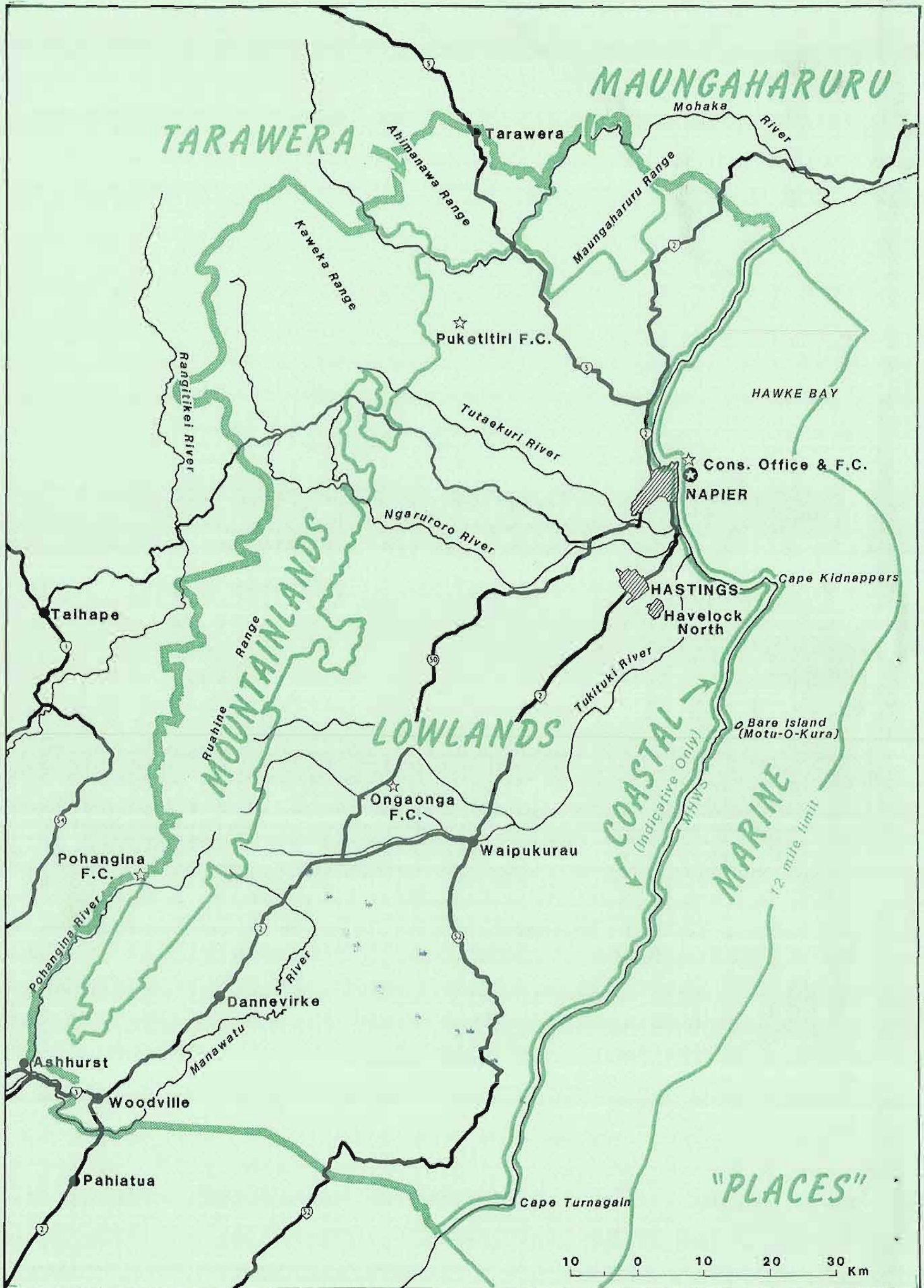
A Conservancy in which people's interaction with land, water and air reflects a spirit of restoration.

A Conservancy in which the bicultural nature of New Zealand is recognised by applying the conservation ethics of each culture to environmental management.

A Conservancy in which there is enthusiasm by local people to be actively involved in conserving their natural and historic heritage for future generations.

A Conservancy in which natural and historic places are enjoyed for recreation.

Section Two
(Places in Hawke's Bay Conservancy)



SECTION TWO - PLACES IN HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY

In this section broad objectives for the management of the natural and historic values present in six major geographic areas of the Conservancy are discussed. The areas are illustrated on Map Two.

The areas are:

Section 2.1	Mountainlands
Section 2.2	Tarawera
Section 2.3	Maungaharuru
Section 2.4	Lowlands
Section 2.5	Coastal
Section 2.6	Marine

Each of the above six areas has its own distinct character resulting from its topographical characteristics and locality in the Conservancy, and from the management issues facing it.

The lowlands differ in that they extend over a relatively large area and cover two broad topographical units: i) rolling to steep country, ii) plains and river terraces (east of the ranges and in the Pohaninga Valley). However, the whole lowland area, as defined on Map Two, is similar in that it is highly modified, contains the vast majority of the population of the Conservancy, and contains few large protected areas. Therefore the management priorities and conservation issues are generally consistent throughout it.

This section should not be read in isolation from Section Three of this CMS, which sets out the objectives and implementation provisions for all the functions of the Department, across all places in the Conservancy. This is because within each "place" in Section Two only the key management objectives/issues are covered. No attempt has been made to cover all functional areas as they relate to Maungaharuru, Lowlands etc. For functional areas that are not covered in this section it can be assumed that the generic functional objectives and implementation provisions as set out in Section Three apply. However, the specific management objectives contained in this section are consistent with the overall functional objectives in Section Three.

For specific details on every area managed by the Department you can refer to the Land Inventory in Volume II, Section Seven of this document.

Section 2.1 MOUNTAINLANDS

*"E tipu rakau i to mana
I nga waerenga a tane
I Ruahine me Kaweka"*

2.1.1 Vision

The mountainlands, which provide an alluring backdrop to the developed lowlands and an area for remote recreation, are cherished, and their vulnerability to the threats posed by exotic pests fully recognised.

These threats are removed so that native plants and animals can prosper in the herbfields, grasslands and forests which make up the area.

2.1.2 Introduction

The bulk of this area is included in the Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks, which are by far the largest areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy (89% of the protected area is within them). Other areas include conservation areas surrounding the parks and a number of marginal strips alongside watercourses.

Conservation Management Plans (CMP's) have recently been prepared for Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks (1991 and 1992 respectively). These plans, which were prepared after extensive public consultation, contain detailed objectives and policies for their management and also include policies on inclusion of some adjacent areas managed by the Department in the parks.

The two plans will remain the principal management documents for the parks. For details on resource information, objectives and policies on all aspects of park management these two plans should be referred to.

2.1.3 Physical Description

The following is a brief summary of the physical nature of the mountainlands. For more detail refer to the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans and to other references cited in the bibliography.

The Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks and surrounding areas are part of the chain of axial mountain ranges running through the North Island. Altitudes range from about 400m on their margins to 1733 m in Ruahine Forest Park and 1724 m in Kaweka Forest Park.

The ranges are characteristically steep and rugged but there are broad, gently sloping plateau areas within and bounding both parks. River valleys are generally steep and deeply incised. Large North Island rivers, such as the Rangitikei, Manawatu, Ngaruroro, Tukituki, Tutaekuri and Mohaka Rivers have their headwaters in the parks.

Both ranges are geologically young, extensively faulted and are still being uplifted. The combination of geological instability, thin soils; weather extremes and steep topography, all contribute to high rates of natural erosion.

In an effort to control erosion, extensive revegetation programmes using introduced plants have been attempted in the past particularly in Kaweka Forest Park. As a result, *Pinus contorta*, the main control species, has become invasive in many areas of Kaweka Forest Park and is a major problem above the bushline where it is displacing indigenous plant communities.

Detailed descriptions of the vegetation in the two forest parks are included in the respective management plans. In summary, vegetation ranges from alpine grasslands and herbfields, down through subalpine shrublands, to beech or kamahi dominated forests, and to podocarp/broadleaved forest types at lower altitudes. Large areas of the vegetation of both parks and surrounding lands have been extensively modified by natural events in the past and more recently by the influence of introduced plants and animals.



Lake Colenso (Kokopunui), in the northwest of Ruahine Forest Park. This lake, set in limestone country, is surrounded by an "island" of lush podocarp forest within an area of predominantly beech forest. The lake and surrounding areas are proposed as an Ecological Area.

2.1.4 History

2.4.1.1 Maori

The mountainlands have a rich history which is described in some detail in the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans.

Maori names for rivers, mountains and valleys in both parks and surrounding areas convey the close associations Maori had with the ranges, although it appears that the ranges were not permanently settled by Maori, who preferred the lowland and particularly coastal areas with their more benign climates and abundant resources. However, they were certainly visited by Maori for hunting, fishing, plant collection and other purposes. Several ancient tracks across the ranges were used to gain access to Inland Patea and the Central Plateau.

There are many stories and legends associated with the ranges which are still unrecorded. What is evident is that the mountainlands, as well as providing food and fibre, were, and still remain of spiritual and cultural significance to Maori people.

2.1.4.2 Pakeha

Pakeha history is also rich and varied. Some of the first Pakeha records of the area were made by the early explorer and botanist, Reverend William Colenso. Colenso has contributed significantly to our knowledge of the natural history of the area, in particular its botanical history.

With settlement, forests surrounding the ranges were steadily removed and clearing of forests within peripheral areas of the ranges, for farming developments and for timber followed.

Introduced animals have been present in the ranges since the 1880's. Sheep and cattle were grazed in some areas and later deer, pigs, goats, and possums spread throughout. Intensive deer culling operations took place in the ranges in the 1950's and 1960's and a network of huts and tracks was established at that time to facilitate these operations. Deer and possums continue to have the most profound effect on natural values in the mountainlands.

Today the mountainlands provide remote recreational opportunities for an increasing number of people. They are also appreciated for their intrinsic values.

2.1.4.3 Actively Managed Historic Places

Seven historic places in the mountainlands are currently included in the Conservancy's register of actively managed historic places. (See Appendix 10 and Section 3.4.2).

2.1.5 Areas Managed by the Department

The Department manages some 163,000 hectares in the mountainlands, the vast majority of which is included in the Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks. A number of conservation areas surrounding the two parks are proposed for inclusion in them.

The areas managed by the Department are shown on maps T22, T23, T24, U19, U21, U22 and U23, in Section 6, Volume II.

Areas Managed by the Department

<u>Land Inventory Number</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Hectares</u>
80001	Timahanga Track Conservation Area	24.33
80018	Omahaki Esplanade Reserve	33.49
80021	Kaweka Forest Park	59,786.10
80024	Ruahine Forest Park	94,430.02
80024 08	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park	1.21
80024 16	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park	44.82
80024 17	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (Andersen exchange)	340.90
80024 18	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (stopped road and gravel Reserve - Wharite)	6.21
80024 19	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park	8.64
80024 20	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (Kawhatau-Kings)	125.88
80024 21	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (McKay)	127.46
80024 22	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (Middle Stream)	86.34
80024 23	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (Watkins, Kawhatau) (2 areas)	67.18
80024 24	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (Big Hill) (3 areas)	401.90
80024 25	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park (Stent, Pourangaki)	46.90
80024 26	Proposed Part Ruahine Forest Park	69.77
80029	Pakaututu Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	295.30
80030	Fernbird Bush Nature Reserve	30.39
80032	Sentry Box Scenic Reserve	29.75
80046	Awarua Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	3886.50
80073	Tutaekuri Climatic Reserve	197.68
80110	Gwavas Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	2872.30
80167	Gold Creek Marginal Strip	18.20
80168	Timahanga Stream Marginal Strip	26.40
80172	Middle Stream Marginal Strip	7.28
80192	Makahu River Marginal Strip	3.80
80193	Mohaka River No 3 Marginal Strip	35.14
80207	Te Waiamaru Stream Marginal Strip	0.20

Protected Private Lands (PPL's) and Conservation Covenants

There is one PPL in the area:

Blowhard Bush PPL - 63.1054 ha (see "Covenant" 10 in Land Inventory - section 7, Volume II)

Walkways

Walkway 9 - Porewa - not gazetted (See Land Inventory - Section 7, Volume II).

Wildlife Refuges

Nil

2.1.6 Natural Values

The Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks and surrounding lands have important natural, soil and water conservation, cultural and landscape values, which are discussed in the respective conservation management plans. They, along with the neighbouring Kaimanawa and Tararua Forest Parks, form an almost continuous chain of protected lands along the central North Island ranges.

Threatened species present in the mountainlands which are considered as priorities for conservation action (see Appendix 2) include: NZ falcon, NZ pigeon, (kereru), blue duck, North Island brown kiwi, North Island kaka, yellow-crowned parakeet, long-tailed bat, small-scaled skink, Powelliphanta snails, and almost certainly some native fish such as koaro.

Important natural areas remain unprotected and vulnerable outside the parks. They are discussed in 2.1.9, (below), and also in 3.2 and 3.5.4.

2.1.7 Issues and Threats

The major threats to natural values remain introduced animals (both browsers and predators), introduced plants (in particular wilding pines, hieracium (hawkweed) and buddleja), and fire.

The vegetation cover in the mountainlands has been subject to great change due to natural events, and more recently human influences (including introduced animals). In both parks there are examples of widespread and radical forest canopy collapse and subsequent lack of regeneration caused by browsing animals (rata/kamahahi forest in the southern Ruahine Range and mountain beech forest in Kaweka Forest Park).

Control of deer in the parks and surrounding areas managed by the Department is primarily by recreational hunting at present. In Ruahine Forest Park this is assisted by commercial aerial recovery. However, deer numbers are still too high almost everywhere to allow adequate recovery of forests following natural damage. Goats are controlled almost exclusively by the Department and possums by commercial operations. Commercial operations are currently having little impact on possum numbers.

As discussed in Section 3.4.4, present funding for wild animal control (based on national priorities for natural values at risk) means that lowland reserve areas are receiving funding ahead of the forest parks. At present there are no possum and deer control programmes in the parks, except specifically to protect areas with very important natural values (eg, mistletoe at Makahu Saddle).

Hares have also been identified as a threat to alpine grasslands and herbfields. The degree of their impact and practical control methods are being investigated by the Department.

Rats, cats, dogs and mustelids present a threat to protected wildlife, particularly ground dwelling birds. A significant blue duck population is present in the Ikawetea, Apias, Makaroro and Pohangina catchments of the Ruahine Ranges. The parts of these catchments included within the Ruahine Forest Park are proposed dog-free areas. Areas with remnant kiwi populations are also proposed dog-free areas (refer to Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans).

The main weed threat is from wilding pines, particularly *Pinus contorta* in Kaweka Forest Park. Pine species were originally introduced for erosion control purposes, but have spread throughout the subalpine shrublands and tussock grasslands in many areas. The Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans set out the approach to be taken to control wilding pines, and operational plans will provide the details of how the work will proceed. The long-term aim is eradication of *Pinus contorta* and other wilding pines which are having an impact on natural values. In the short-term, priority will be given to the identification of critical areas and control in them, as resources permit.

Buddleja is spreading throughout many rivers and streams in Ruahine Forest Park. The extent of its impact on native plants and animals is not yet clear and this will be monitored.

The important wetland areas and red tussock grasslands on private lands in the northern Ruahine Ranges are also threatened by fire, stock grazing and trail bikes.

2.1.8 Public use

The parks are an important recreational resource in the North Island. They are close to and accessible to large population centres in the central and southern North Island and provide for a range of remote experience opportunities. The fringes are also receiving more use by day visitors for activities such as picnicking, walking and swimming.

An extensive hut and track network was established in the parks in the 1950's and 1960's for deer culling purposes. Some of the huts and tracks are now inappropriately located to meet the needs of today's park users and may not be maintained in the future, unless supported by public use or required for management purposes.

To facilitate public use and enjoyment of the parks, adequate foot and road access must be provided. Existing foot access is inadequate in some areas. There have been some difficulties in the past as park users have not always been aware of legal accessways, or of their rights and responsibilities in crossing these private lands. As outlined in the two forest park conservation management plans the Department will endeavour to maintain and where necessary enhance access to the parks. This will be done in liaison with the appropriate landowners.

Monitoring of public use and impacts is important. Currently the parks do not receive the use pressures of some other adjacent natural areas, such as Tongariro National Park. Visitors are mainly from within New Zealand, and hunting, especially in Kaweka Forest Park is a predominant activity. However some key areas (eg, Sunrise hut in Ruahine Forest Park and the Te Puia area of Kaweka Forest Park) are heavily used.

Helicopters are increasingly being used to gain access to the interior areas of the two parks, particularly by hunters. Although helicopters can assist in wild animal control, their use will be closely monitored as they can also impact on natural values and the enjoyment of the area by other visitors. Vehicles, particularly four-wheel drive vehicles and trail-bikes, but also mountain bikes, pose threats to other users and natural values if used inappropriately or in sensitive areas. Only limited areas are available for their use in the mountainlands.



*Tussock grasslands of the Mokai Patea Range in northwest Ruahine Forest Park. The crests of the Ruahine Ranges are clothed in tussock grasslands, in this case interspersed with the attractive flowers of the spaniard *Aciphylla* sp. In the background are the steep and rugged headwaters of the Kawhatau Valley, with beech forests rising to 1300 m.*

2.1.9 Important Unprotected Areas

Areas with important natural values remain unprotected and vulnerable in the mountainlands. The Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans and the Protected Natural Areas Programme (PNAP²) have highlighted the significance of and threats to these areas (see also Sections 3.2 and 3.5.4).

Key habitats which remain under-represented (or unrepresented) on protected lands in the ecological regions within the mountainlands include:

- Podocarp forests (Kaimanawa Ecological District).

² *The mountainlands are largely included in the Ruahine, Moawhango and Kaimanawa Ecological Districts (See Map 5). Refer to Bibliography for details on the relevant PNA surveys.*

- Lower altitude forests and landscapes (below 300 - 500 m) surrounding Ruahine Forest Park (Ruahine Ecological District).
- Secondary vegetation or natural non-forest ecosystems (Moawhango Ecological District).
- Podocarp forests and mixed beech associations (Moawhango Ecological District).
- Most of the biogeographically special plants, and their habitats, in the Moawhango Ecological District (within Hawke's Bay Conservancy these areas are largely just to the north of Ruahine Forest Park).

The following areas are of particular importance:

- Ngamatea

The Ngamatea area contains important wetland areas, and remnants of the once extensive red tussock grasslands remain on the Ngamatea and Mangaohane Plateaux.

A 1763 ha area of Ngamatea East Swamp is included as a Recommended Area for Protection (RAP) in the Moawhango Ecological District. The swamp has unique landform, vegetation and biogeographic attributes. It contains two biogeographically special plants; *Uncinia strictissima* and *Ranunculus recens* var. Banded dotterel inhabit the basin and nest on its western margin. The swamp was also a celebrated eel fishery for early Maori (Rogers, 1993).

These important values are threatened by the spread of *Pinus contorta* and to a lesser extent by fire, browsing animals, trail bikes, farm development and *hieracium*.

- Mokai Patea Range

A substantial part of this range is on private land adjacent to Ruahine Forest Park. It contains important alpine wetlands, red tussock grasslands, alpine herbfields, large land snails and possibly kiwi.

- No Mans Bog and Pohokura Lakes

Two important wetland areas to the north of Ruahine Forest Park.

- Regenerating Forests

Important areas of regenerating forests, dominated by manuka and kanuka, occur in the Taruarau area, and north of the No Mans area.

- Owhaoko

An area of mountain beech forest, manuka shrublands and red tussock grasslands, to the west of Kaweka Forest Park.

A 1130 ha area is included as a Recommended Area for Protection (RAP) in the Moawhango Ecological District. It includes the largest isolated remnant of mountain beech forest on the Owhaoko land system with a representative mix of all secondary

vegetation on the variety of greywacke landforms. *Carex buchanaui*, a local sedge in the North Island, occurs on the summit ridge of the area, about Mt Meany (Rogers, 1993).

This area is vulnerable to browsing mammals farmed and feral animals and *Pinus contorta* invasion.

- Waiokotore Catchment (NW Ruahine Range)

A very important area for its scientific values as it preserves vegetation successions dating from the time of early Maori burnings. Most of these fire succession patterns have largely vanished in the Moawhango Ecological District as a result of later fires, and it is only in the Waiokotore Stream that they have been preserved. Rogers (pers comm)³ regards this as one of the few, if not the only sites, where these early fire-induced succession patterns are preserved in New Zealand.

The ancient forests are dominated by kaikawaka, with associated Hall's totara and pink pine. The rare plant *Pittosporum turneri* is also found in the area.

- Mount Aorangi

Mt Aorangi⁴ is a distinctive landscape feature of the Rangitikei area and is contiguous with Ruahine Forest Park.

The area contains forest and non-forest vegetation sequences that were once typical of the ecological region but have now all but vanished, and has significant soil and water conservation values.

Negotiations are continuing between the Department and the Maori owners of Mount Aorangi over possible formal protection of the area.

- Ikawetea/Apias Catchment (outside Ruahine Forest Park)

Both catchments provide valuable blue duck habitats. The upper Apias catchment is important because there are no introduced fish species present. This area is currently leased by the Department on a short-term lease.

- Wetland areas just north of Ruahine Forest Park on the Mangaohane Plateau

These wetlands include Reporoa Bog⁵ and Makirikiri⁵ Tarns which contain a large and specialised flora, with several rare, endemic and disjunct⁶ species.

³ GM Rogers (Manaaki Whenua, Landcare Research, Rotorua).

⁴ Located in Wanganui Conservancy.

⁵ Located in Wanganui Conservancy.

⁶ Species confined to the Mangaohane Plateau in the North Island, but also found in parts of the South Island.

2.1.10 Management Objectives

- i To seek an integrated⁷ approach to land management, irrespective of ownership, in co-operation with other landowners and local authorities.
- ii To advocate greater protection of areas and habitats with high natural or historic values on private land, through statutory processes and by liaison and co-operation with other landowners. Particular areas of importance include:
 - Ngamatea East Swamp;
 - No Mans Bog and Pohokura Lakes;
 - Waiokotore Catchment;
 - Ikawetea/Apias Catchment;
 - Mokai Patea Range;
 - Owhaoko;
 - Mount Aorangi;
 - Wetland areas on the Mangaohane Plateau.(See Sections 2.1.9 and 2.5.4.2)
- iii To protect the soil and water conservation and water quality/quantity values of areas managed by the Department, primarily by animal pest control⁸ and fire prevention.
- iv To endeavour to protect the soil and water conservation and water quality/quantity values of areas not managed by the Department, by advocating the protection of riparian vegetation and the protection of remaining forested catchments, through statutory and non-statutory processes. (See also Sections 3.3 and 3.9).
- v To advocate by statutory and non-statutory processes the protection of rivers, streams and wetlands which have high natural, historic or recreation values.

The headwaters of several major North Island Rivers (Rangitikei, Mohaka, Ngaruroro, Tutaekuri, Manawatu) cross the mountainlands and have high natural, historic and recreation values, as do numerous smaller streams and rivers in the area. (See also Section 3.6.3.7).

The key wetlands are listed in Section 2.1.9.
- vi To review the status of areas managed by the Department adjacent to the forest parks and to include these in the parks if appropriate. (See also Section 3.7).

(continues)

⁷ See Section 2.4.7.

⁸ Animal pest control may consist of a combination of recreational and commercial hunting, and departmental control where necessary, combined with fencing to prevent re-introduction of animals.

- vii To maintain, and where appropriate enhance, public access to areas managed by the Department, particularly to the forest parks.
- viii In the provision of further recreational facilities, to give more emphasis to day-use opportunities on the fringes of the mountainlands.
- ix To maintain the remote experience qualities of some areas, as outlined in the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans.
- x To manage Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks in accordance with the Kaweka Forest Park Conservation Management Plan, 1991 and the Ruahine Forest Park Conservation Management Plan 1992, respectively. The overall objectives in those conservation management plans are as follows:

"The management objectives for the Park(s) are derived from S19(1)(a) and (b) of the (Conservation) Act and reflect the requirement to firstly protect the natural values of the area, and secondly to facilitate appropriate recreational use and enjoyment" (Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans).

Note: Refer to the respective conservation management plans for detailed objectives and policies.

2.1.11 Specific Places Requiring More Detailed Discussion

To date, no specific areas managed by the Department in the mountainlands have been identified as requiring further detailed discussion. The conservation management plans prepared for the Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks, in 1991 and 1992 respectively, provide details on the important management issues in and surrounding the Parks.

Section 2.2 TARAWERA

*"Te puawai o Rakaihikuroa
E tau nei
Ko koe Tarawera
I raro Ahimanawa"*

2.2.1 Vision

Tarawera with its multitude of deep green ridges and valleys, its important plant associations and remote qualities, is widely appreciated by the people of the region, and carefully managed to protect and enhance these qualities.

2.2.2 Introduction

The areas managed by the Department at Tarawera consist of a cluster of reserves, conservation areas and marginal strips in the dissected hill country in the northwest of the Conservancy (see Map Two).

They are located on the Ahimanawa Ranges (Tarawera and Stoney Creek Conservation Areas) and on the true right of the Waipunga River, being bounded to the east by the rugged Tatarakina block which is located at the southern end of the Huiarau Range.

The areas managed by the Department are predominantly surrounded by private exotic forests, regenerating or mature indigenous forest or hill country farmlands. Much of the Tarawera area has been logged and cleared in the past for farming and there are large areas of regenerating forest and reverting grazing land.

Tarawera is distant from major population centres but the busy Napier-Taupo Highway it traverses allows easy access to the edges of most areas managed by the Department.

2.2.3 Physical Description

2.2.3.1 Topography

The Ahimanawa Ranges and Tatarakina Block (which border the area) consist of heavily dissected and rugged hill country (the name Tatarakina refers to the spiny kina or sea urchin). In profile they show peak after peak of sharp crests without any prominent leading ridges. Numerous rapidly flowing streams traverse the area, reflecting the youth and ruggedness of this landscape.

The area is lower in altitude than the nearby Kaweka and Kaimanawa Ranges, (altitudes range from approximately 300 m to 1160 m) and consequently the natural bushline reaches the hilltops in most places.

The Ahimanawa Ranges are formed of bands of sandstones and shales and like the Kaweka Ranges were uplifted in Pliocene times. They form the eastern-most margin of the mountainous country and rise abruptly from the lower and younger country of Hawke's Bay.

Further east a faultline marks the boundary of the younger Jurassic, sedimentary rocks which make up the hills of the Tatarakina area.

Pumice and ignimbrite flows from Taupo eruptions have smothered the area in the past causing distinctive landscape features, such as extensive terraces along rivers (eg, the Waipunga). Volcanic activity is still evident today, notably at the Tarawera Hot Springs Scenic Reserve.



Access road to Stoney Creek Conservation Area, showing the impressive podocarp stands which characterise the mid-altitude forests that remain in the Tarawera area.

2.2.3.2 Climate

Tarawera has a high rainfall, mountainous climate, although conditions vary greatly with altitude and exposure. It receives considerably more rainfall (approximately 1200 - 2400 mm) and is much cooler than the Hawke's Bay lowlands to the east.

Like the lowlands, it is subject to easterly weather patterns and can receive very heavy rainfall from this direction. Unlike the lowlands it also receives heavy rainfall from the northwest.

Snow lies on the tops of the hills for several days in most winters but seldom remains elsewhere.

2.2.3.3 Vegetation

The area lies within the Kaimanawa Ecological District.

Prior to human settlement the area was almost entirely forested except for slips, cliffs and riverbeds. Since then the vegetation cover has undergone extensive modification. Extensive burning began in pre-European times and continued up to at least the beginning of this century on the margins of the Ahimanawa Ranges.

Since then large areas have been logged, particularly in the Tarawera and Waipunga areas, where there were extensive podocarp stands. Introduced plants and animals have continued this modification.

Today much of Tarawera is clothed in a complex mosaic of regenerating native vegetation. This includes manuka forest (with varying amounts of broadleaved tree species, shrubs and wharariki⁹), kanuka forest, mixed broadleaved/podocarp secondary forest, cutover podocarp/beech forest and bracken fernland.

Where there has been no logging (Stoney Creek and Tarawera Conservation Areas) the forests consist mainly of beech, with impressive stands of podocarps (rimu, kahikatea, matai, miro) and maire at lower levels. Red beech, and to a lesser extent silver beech, dominate at lower levels and mountain beech enters at higher altitudes.

2.2.4 History

2.2.4.1 Maori History

Te Haroto and Tarawera were and still are the home of Ngati Hineuru and Ngati Kahungunu. The relationship of Ngati Hineuru with lowland tribes and with the Maungaharuru area is described in Section 2.3.

Historic evidence suggests that parts of forests were burned for cultivation purposes by Maori and that the river valleys were permanently settled. There are a few recorded archaeological sites in the area although surveys would likely reveal further

⁹ *Mountain flax.*

sites. The site of a Maori pa, Tupurupuru, is located in Turangakumu Scenic Reserve.

Tarawera was and remains an important crossroads between the coast and the interior. The Napier -Taupo Road (SH5) was originally a Maori track used for access between Hawke's Bay and Taupo.

2.2.4.2 Pakeha Influence

Following Pakeha settlement in the area, the felling of forests for timber and pastoral farming purposes continued. Settlements grew at Te Haroto and Tarawera and these places became important stopping places for coaches on the Napier-Taupo road. Tarawera was an especially popular rest area because of the hot springs which were developed in the early 1900's.

Pastoral farming and exotic forestry remain the main land uses of the area today.

2.2.4.3 Actively Managed Historic Places

On lands managed by the Department in Tarawera there are currently no places included in the Conservancy's register of actively managed historic places. (See Appendix 10 and Section 3.4.2).

2.2.5 Areas Managed by the Department

The Department manages 2635 hectares in the area. The bulk of the area is included in the Tarawera and Stoney Creek Conservation Areas (These are shown on Map V19, in Section 6, Volume II).

Areas Managed by the Department

<u>Land Inventory Number</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Hectares</u>
80009	Turangakumu Scenic Reserve	142.65
80011	Town Conservation Area	0.81
80012	Waipunga Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	83.94
80013	Esk Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	0.03
80080	Upper Mohaka Domain Recreation Reserve	10.63
80102	Tarawera Hot Springs Scenic Reserve	11.07
80124	Stoney Creek Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	740.00
80133	Tarawera Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	1485.66
80162	Waipunga No 2 Conservation Area	156.20
80217	Mohaka River No 6 Marginal Strip	4.50
80220	Waipunga River Marginal Strip	0.75

Covenants

There are three conservation covenants in the area, adjacent to the Stoney Creek Conservation Area. (see Land Inventory, in Volume II, section 7).

Covenant 13	- Stoney Creek B (1.1 ha)
Covenant 14	- Stoney Creek C (25.47 ha)
Covenant 15	- Stoney Creek D (8.577 ha)

Walkways

Nil.

Wildlife Refuges

Nil.

2.2.6 Natural Values

2.2.6.1 Landscape, Landform and Geological Features

As outlined in Section 2.2.3.1 much of Tarawera is heavily dissected and rugged. Along with the adjoining Maungaharuru area, its distinctive landscape character sets it apart from the lowland areas to the east and the Rangitaiki Plain and Central North Island Plateau to the west. A geological feature of note in the area is the hot-springs, within Tarawera Hot Springs Scenic Reserve, which has been selected by the New Zealand Geological Society as worthy of protection as a "geothermal site". A number of other geological sites and landforms considered to be of national or regional significance are also located in the area. (Geological Society of NZ, 1993).

2.2.6.2 Soil and Water Conservation

Streams and rivers flowing out of these areas are important fish and wildlife habitats, and have high recreational values. Many watercourses are steep-sided and swift flowing. Protection of riparian vegetation for soil conservation and wildlife habitat purposes is of great importance.

2.2.6.3 Vegetation

Forests of the Ahimanawa Ranges include within them plant communities of intermediate zones between the Bay of Plenty ranges to the north and the Central North Island ranges. They contain forest components which have affinities with the more northern forests that are not present in the other Hawke's Bay/Taupo ranges (eg, *Quintinia serrata*, *Ixerba brexioides* (tawari), *Dracophyllum latifolium* and *Phyllocladus glaucus* (northern toatoa).

The impressive podocarp remnant forests in these areas are also not found in the adjacent forest parks.

The Stage One PNAP survey of the Kaimanawa Ecological District has been completed. This survey concluded that the area was of "exceptional ecological significance" because of the above factors.

In addition, modified vegetation communities have the capacity to regenerate to native forest, and most are doing so rapidly.

2.2.6.4 Native Wildlife

The current forests provide an important habitat for a variety of native animals. Because the area is lower in altitude than the nearby forest parks they provide an important food source for birds, especially during winter.

Threatened species present in Tarawera which are considered a priority for conservation action (see Appendix 2) include: NZ falcon, NZ pigeon (kereru), North Island brown kiwi, North Island kaka, blue duck, long-tailed bats and yellow-crowned parakeet. As there have been no native fish or invertebrate surveys done in the area our knowledge of their presence and abundance is incomplete.

2.2.7 Issues and Threats

- Habitat Degradation and Species Protection

The impacts of deer, goats and possums are already causing habitat degradation and threatening native wildlife, and will continue to do so. At present only recreational hunting is permitted in the areas managed by the Department. To protect the important ecological and soil and water conservation values of the area it is appropriate that both commercial and recreational hunting are encouraged.

The presence of kiwi and blue duck in the area is significant and control of dogs in the two large conservation areas (Stoney Creek and Tarawera) is essential to protect these species.

Wilding pines¹⁰, mainly *Pinus radiata* to date, but potentially the more aggressive *Pinus contorta*, threaten the more open spaces. Although this area has significantly more rainfall than areas further east, from time to time fire is still a threat.

At present many areas managed by the Department are "ecologically" linked by remnant or regenerating forests on private lands. Clearance of these forests would greatly diminish the natural values in these areas and will have an effect on surrounding areas. The Department's role as an advocate for conservation generally can be used to seek appropriate protection of and controls on land uses of those areas.

2.2.8 Public Use

Recreational use of areas managed by the Department is low compared to lowland areas and the nearby Kaweka and Kaimanawa Forest Parks. The predominant activities are hunting, and to a much lesser extent tramping. There are few tracks and no huts in the area and no developments are proposed. (see Sections 2.2.10 and 3.8.2).

Access to the boundaries of most areas is from SH5 via smaller roads or access easements through the exotic forests.

¹⁰ See Glossary.

2.2.9 Important Unprotected Areas

Areas with important natural values remain unprotected and vulnerable in the Tarawera area. While most remaining mature and regenerating forests are important for their wildlife habitat and soil and water conservation values, several areas have been identified as priorities for protection in the Kaimanawa PNAP and other departmental surveys (see also Sections 3.2 and 3.5.4).

They include:

- The unprotected crests of the Ahimanawa Range
- The unprotected areas of the Ahimanawa Range generally (which have a large component of *Quintinia* in their forest subcanopies).
- Te Matai Block - an area of high natural value containing kiwi, blue duck, NZ falcon, North Island robin, kaka and almost certainly, long-tailed bats. There are impressive podocarp stands in the area, but introduced animals are largely preventing regeneration.
- Remaining podocarp stands at lower altitudes.

2.2.10 Management Objectives

i To protect the natural and historic values of areas managed by the Department, primarily through:

- * Fire prevention and control;
- * Weed control - priority will be given to wilding pine elimination;
- * Animal pest control - primarily through encouragement (with appropriate controls) of commercial and recreational hunting.

ii To advocate, through statutory processes, through implementation of the PNAP recommendations and liaison and co-operation with other landowners, greater protection of areas not managed by the Department where these have high natural or historic values.

Particular areas/habitats of importance include:

- * The unprotected crests of the Ahimanawa Range;
- * The unprotected areas of the Ahimanawa Range;
- * Te Matai Block;
- * Remaining podocarp stands at lower altitudes.

iii To seek an integrated¹¹ approach to land management, irrespective of ownership, with the co-operation of other landowners and local authorities in order to protect the important natural values of the area, and to maintain and enhance "ecological corridors".

(continues)

¹¹ See Section 2.4.7.

- iv To protect the soil and water conservation and water quality values of the areas managed by the Department, primarily by animal pest control and fire prevention and control.
- v To endeavour to protect the soil and water conservation and water quality values of areas not managed by the Department, by advocating the protection of riparian vegetation and the protection of remaining forested catchments, through statutory and non-statutory processes. (see also Sections 3.3 and 3.9).
- vi To undertake wildlife surveys in the area to improve knowledge of the presence and conservation status of wildlife; in particular, North Island brown kiwi, blue duck and North Island kaka. (see also Section 3.5.2).
- vii To prohibit the taking of dogs into Tarawera and Stoney Creek Conservation Areas, except where specifically permitted for management purposes¹². (Regulations will be sought to enforce this).
- viii To retain the current remote/undeveloped nature of the area.
- ix To maintain existing legal and physical access provisions.
- x To review the status of Stoney Creek and Tarawera Conservation Areas, and to proceed to appropriately alter them if necessary. (see also Section 3.7).
- xi To encourage the participation of local communities in conservation management and conservation initiatives in the area.

2.2.11 Specific Places Requiring More Detailed Discussion

To date, no specific areas managed by the Department within Tarawera have been identified as requiring further detailed discussion.

¹² *This prohibition does not apply to seeing-eye dogs, police dogs or dogs used for search and rescue purposes.*

Section 2.3 MAUNGAHARURU

*"Ka huakina a Maungaharuru
Ka pa a Tangitu
Ka huakina a Tangitu
Ka pa a Maungaharuru"*

2.3.1 Vision

Maungaharuru with its spectacular and rugged landforms, incised rivers, threatened wildlife, and distinctive plant communities, is recognised as an area of significant ecological value.

Not only are the best remaining natural features protected, but also the linkages, or "stepping-stones" between them.

2.3.2 Introduction

The Maungaharuru Range is a distinctive and spectacular landscape feature in the northwestern sector of the Conservancy. It has high natural and recreational values.

Some 3423 hectares are managed by the Department on the crest and flanks of the range and on the banks of the Mohaka River adjacent to the range (see Map Two). However, these protected areas are scattered and many important features remain unprotected or inadequately protected.

2.3.3 Physical Description

2.3.3.1 Topography

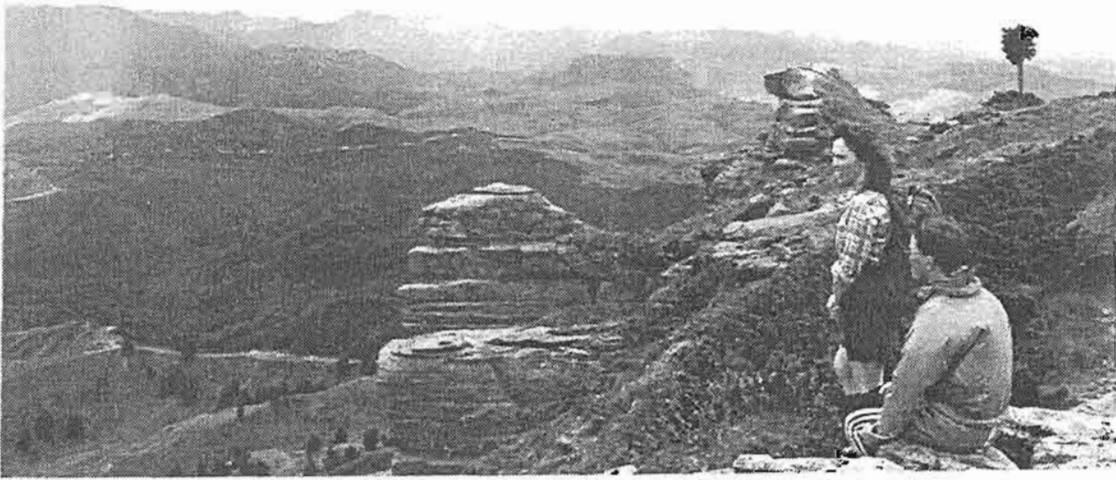
The Maungaharuru Range is the most spectacular landform feature of the Maungaharuru Ecological District (see Map Five). It is composed of a plateau of sandstones, siltstones and limestones which have been uplifted, tilted and dissected, producing a complex landscape - steep escarpments, limestone outcrops, deeply gorged streams and slumps in many areas.

Altitude ranges from approximately 300 m, to 1308 m at Taraponui, which is on the crest of the Range.

There are numerous small slump wetlands and several larger wetlands in the area, the most significant being Lake Opouahi and Morrisons Lake. Waterways which flow off the Range, such as the Waikoau River and Boundary Stream, have sections that are deeply incised, forming impressive limestone gorges.

The Mohaka River, which forms the western and northern boundary of this area, is one of the major rivers of the North Island, with outstanding natural, wild, scenic and recreational values. The Department has been extensively involved in supporting an

application for a National Water Conservation Order (NWCO)¹³ on the river and has advocated that these values and other values be protected by a NWCO from the source of the river to the sea. A draft NWCO has been recommended for parts of the river adjacent to Maungaharuru and also in its headwaters.



The distinctive limestone landforms of the Maungaharuru Range, with Waitere Kivi Conservation Area to the left.

2.3.3.2 Climate

The area has a wetter, cloudier and cooler climate than the lowlands to the east. Rainfall varies from 1400 to 2000 mm per annum, with heavy rain coming predominantly from the south and southeast. Rainfall and frequency of snowfalls increase with altitude. Snow lies on the crest of the range for several days in most winters but seldom remains in other areas.

2.3.3.3 Vegetation

The original vegetation has been greatly modified since human settlement of the area. Prior to settlement forests would have cloaked the whole landscape. Some (modified) forest remnants remain in areas like Bellbird Bush and Boundary Stream Scenic Reserves, but most of the original forests have been logged or burned, and cleared for farming or exotic forestry.

¹³ See Glossary.

The dominant forest remaining is a podocarp/broadleaf forest. Tawa, kamahi, lacebark, mahoe, titoki, rewarewa and kanuka are the most common trees, and there are places where kahikatea, matai, maire, red and black beech and Hall's totara are dominant. Many of the forests are in a regeneration phase. Nikau palms are surprisingly present at lower altitudes and cabbage trees are common.

On the crest of the range are distinctive "cloud-cap" forests of mountain holly, broadleaf, horopito and shield fern, and some rare specialised plants (such as *Pimelea* "Maungaharuru") occur on limestone outcrops.

In the Mohaka catchment significant areas of diverse shrublands and low forests occur, with kanuka often dominant.

Exotic pine plantations and farmland surround the areas managed by the Department. In many areas there are significant remnants of native shrublands and bush on the farmlands. Important natural areas still remain unprotected on private land. The most valuable of these are areas of mountain holly/broadleaf forests and red tussock grasslands.

2.3.4 History

2.3.4.1 Maori History

Maungaharuru is known as the "rumbling mountain". According to Maori legend, when the Takitimu Canoe went past the area the Tohunga on board threw a papamua (a wooden carving in the form of a bird) in the direction of Maungaharuru. When it landed the sound of birds alighting caused the mountain to "roar". This was also heard over the succeeding generations as birds alighted from the trees in the morning and returned in the evening.

Maungaharuru is glorified by all hapu of the district in many of the oral traditions, in chants, in waiata and in whakatauki.

<i>"Ka huakina a Maungaharuru</i>	<i>When Maungaharuru (the range) is open</i>
<i>Ka pa a Tangitu</i>	<i>Tangitu (the coast) is closed</i>
<i>Ka huakina a Tangitu</i>	<i>When Tangitu is open Maungahauru is closed</i>
<i>Ka pa a Maungaharuru"</i>	

The above whakatauki reflects the seasonal movements of people. At certain times (eg, when the kahawai were running), the people would move to the coast and at other times would move to hinterland areas such as Maungaharuru for bird snaring and berry gathering. Seabirds also used to breed on the range and were harvested by Maori.

The Range was used as a communal area for a number of surrounding hapu. Up until recent times the resources of the area were used for exchanges and trade in kereru, dried fish and shellfish between the people of the coast and inland hapu.

Therefore the Range and surrounding areas were lived in and used on a seasonal basis by Maori. Little evidence of Maori occupation now remains in the area. There is a pa site (Kokopura) north east of Lake Opouahi.

2.3.4.2 Pakeha Influence

From the 1870's pastoral farming developments greatly modified the area. Large areas of forest were burned or felled and most of the large timber trees extracted. Domestic stock and other introduced animals have continued this modification to the present day.

However, due to its relative inaccessibility, significant areas remained in forest or shrublands, especially on the western side of the range, until the early 1970's. At this time Department of Lands and Survey farm developments began and further areas were cleared for the Opouahi, Waitere and Woodstock farm settlement blocks.

Exotic afforestation also began in earnest during the early 1970's and continued until the mid 1980's by the New Zealand Forest Service. Again large areas of low forests and shrublands were cleared. There are now a number of private companies managing the exotic forests in the area.

A small gold mining operation was started on the banks of the Mohaka River in the early 1900's, but it did not prove to be viable.

Today commercial land use in the area continues in the form of extensive pastoral farming and exotic forestry. Recreation/tourism uses of the Mohaka River have been increasing in recent years and an increasing number of people are now visiting the area to experience its natural and recreational values.

2.3.4.3 Actively Managed Historic Places

There are currently no historic places on lands managed by the Department in Maungaharuru, included in the Conservancy's register of actively managed historic places. (See Appendix 10 and Section 3.4.2).

2.3.5 Areas Managed by the Department

The Department manages some 3426 hectares in Maungaharuru. The largest area is the Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area. All areas are shown on Map V19, in Section 6, Volume II.

Areas Managed by the Department

Land Inventory Number	Name	Hectares
80017	Mohaka Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	50.00
80019	Morrison's Lake Reserve (Wildlife reserve)	6.17
80022	Cashes Bush Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	187.30
80025	Waikoau Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	260.00
80026	Beilbird Bush Scenic Reserve	181.93
80027	Opouahi Scenic Reserve	130.82
80028	Boundary Stream Scenic Reserve	702.43
80034	Glenfalls Recreation Reserve	4.20
80070	Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	1662.50
80076	Glenfalls Scenic Reserve	3.10

Land Inventory Number	Name	Hectares
80077	Limestone Ridge Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	162.50
80189	Mohaka River No 1 Marginal Strip	44.53
80190	Mohaka River No 2 Marginal Strip	2.80
80195	Mohaka River No 8 Marginal Strip	22.10
80208	Mohaka River No 4 Marginal Strip	2.72
80218	Mohaka River No 7 Marginal Strip	4.60

Covenants

There are two conservation covenants in the area. (See Land Inventory in Volume II, Section 7).

Covenant 11 - Birches Conservation Covenant (188.9463 ha)

Covenant 12 - Woodstock Conservation Covenant (c132 ha)

Walkways (see Land Inventory in Section 7, Volume II).

Walkway 7 - Opouahi

Walkway 8 - Boundary Stream

Wildlife Refuges

Nil

2.3.6 Natural Values

2.3.6.1 Landscape, Landform and Geological Features

The Maungaharuru Range is a spectacular landscape feature which is visible from much of northern Hawke's Bay. On its crest are slumps, cliffs and limestone outcrops, including the well known Bell Rock. Throughout the area the limestone landscape is dotted with tomos, underground streams, incised gorges and intricately weathered rocky outcrops.

From the top of the range there are extensive views over Hawke's Bay north across the Mohaka and Te Hoe catchments and to the mountain ranges in the west and south. The red tussock grasslands remaining on the range have important landscape as well as scientific values.

The Mohaka River, with its impressive gorge scenery, bounds the area. Watercourses, such as Waikoau River and Boundary Stream form incised limestone gorges as they cut through the landscape. There are a number of waterfalls throughout the lengths of these rivers. Shines Falls, on the Boundary Stream Walkway, is one of the most impressive and most visited of these falls.

The Organs area of the Mohaka River has been identified by the NZ Geological Society as a significant "landform and deformation site", worthy of protection. A number of other geological sites and landforms considered to be of national or regional significance are also located in the area. (Geological Society of NZ, 1993).

2.3.6.2 Soil and Water Conservation

Although much of the native vegetation has been cleared, significant areas of riparian vegetation remain alongside watercourses such as the Waikoau River. These areas are important as wildlife corridors as well as for their role in soil and water conservation and protection of water quality.

Other areas of mature forest and regenerating shrublands on steep slopes also play a crucial role in protecting soil and water conservation values.

2.3.6.3 Vegetation

The PNAP has identified a number of threatened or biogeographically significant plants in the area:

- *Pleurosorus rutifolius* - small fern inhabiting limestone outcrops.
- *Pimelea* "Maungaharuru" - (undescribed, aff. *P. aridula*): small shrub, local form is endemic to Maungaharuru.
- *Teucrium parvifolium* - small shrub growing on margins of open lowland forest, in tall scrub and on rock outcrops (rare).
- *Hebe colensoi* var *hillii* - small shrub of riverbanks and cliffs, with restricted distribution.
- *Rhopalostylis sapida* - nikau: not rare in New Zealand, but reaching an inland limit near the south of its range near Lake Opouahi.
- *Jovellana sinclairii* - herb found on streamlands and shady banks. Not rare in New Zealand but restricted in east coast North Island and at its southern limit of range in Maungaharuru Ecological District.
- *Clianthus puniceus* - Kakabeak. Single plants have been found adjacent to the Limestone Ridge Conservation Area, and in Boundary Stream Scenic Reserve. (See Appendix 2).

Other Important/Distinctive Plant Communities Include:

- The crest of the Maungaharuru range
 - small distinctive areas in mountain holly, broadleaf and horopito ("cloud-cap" forests).
 - red tussock (well east of the main North Island ranges).
- Kanuka and manuka communities (Mohaka River area).
- Mixed podocarp/beech forests at lower altitudes (remaining areas are significant as the majority of this forest type has been cleared from the area, and because of the importance of these forests as wildlife habitats).
- Remnant (scattered) trees in open areas - cabbage trees are common.

2.3.6.4 Native Wildlife

Threatened wildlife, considered to be priority species for conservation action (see Appendix 2) include:

- North Island Brown Kiwi
 - * Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area contains the largest concentrated population of kiwi in Hawke's Bay;
 - * Kiwi are also present in Boundary Stream Scenic Reserve;
 - * Kiwi have been reported from several other areas (to be confirmed). These areas include, Cashes Bush, Bellbird Bush Scenic Reserve, and Limestone Ridge Conservation Area.

- NZ Falcon
Present in a number of areas.

- Blue Duck
Unconfirmed reports from Waikoau Stream.

- NZ pigeon (Kereru)

- NZ Dabchick

- Native snails - *Powelliphanta marchanti*

- Native fish - koaro, banded kokopu and tuna (eel).

The remaining forests also provide valuable habitats for more common bush birds, or birds with regional significance such as tui, bellbird, rifleman and long-tailed cuckoo.

Surveys are needed to determine what other species, such as invertebrates and lizards, are present and their importance.

2.3.7 Issues and Threats

- Landscape, Landform and Geological Features - There are large areas of exotic pine plantations in the area. The Department will advocate for appropriate controls on further plantings to ensure that the distinctive landscape values are protected. Protection of these values on the crest and flanks of the Maungaharuru Range is a high priority, as are the riparian areas alongside the Mohaka River and the deeply entrenched Waikoau Stream. Clearance of native vegetation for pastoral farming purposes is also continuing in some areas and is of concern to the Department, particularly alongside watercourses.

- Wildlife - The habitats for native wildlife are threatened by habitat destruction on private lands (removal of wildlife corridors) and by the deterioration of habitats caused by introduced plants and animals.

- Goats - Goats have been present in high numbers but are now greatly reduced. Fencing of areas managed by the Department to prevent reinfestation of goats, and liaison/co-operation with adjoining landowners is very important.
- Possums - These animals pose a great threat to small remnant areas. Their numbers have been significantly reduced, both by departmental operations, and by the Regional Council, but continued control is essential to protect natural values.
- Fire - Public awareness and co-operation is essential to minimise the risk of fire. Areas managed by the Department that are surrounded by exotic plantations are particularly vulnerable. Close liaison between the Department and private forest owners is essential. Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area is also particularly vulnerable to fire (See Section 3.4.3).
- Weeds - The presence of the aquatic plant, hydrilla, at Lake Opouahi is of national concern. How best to control and prevent its spread without impacting on important natural or historic values, is a key management issue. Continued vigilance is also necessary to prevent the spread of *Clematis vitalba* onto areas managed by the Department.
- Domestic Stock - Fencing of areas managed by the Department is vital to their protection from the depredations of domestic stock.
- Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area - Protection of the important kiwi population in this area is a management priority. Pigs pose a threat to this population and a reduction in their numbers is highly desirable. Dogs are often used to assist with pighunting. However, because of the threat dogs pose to kiwi, they will not be allowed in the area, except where specifically permitted for management purposes. (See Section 2.3.10(ix)).

2.3.8 Public Use

Day-use activities, such-as walking and picnicking, and angling, rafting and canoeing on the Mohaka River are the main recreational uses of the area. While it does not have the high profile of the nearby forest parks, Maungaharuru's proximity to Napier-Hastings and the diverse opportunities available in the area make it likely that use will increase in the future. Highest use areas are Boundary Stream and Bellbird Bush Scenic Reserves, Lake Opouahi and areas alongside the Mohaka River. Camping is available at Glenfalls (alongside the Mohaka River), although access can be restricted at times because of a difficult stream crossing. The access road to this area may be closed at times of extreme fire risk because it passes through private exotic forests.

Walking access to the crest of the Range is off Pohokura road. There is now an access easement to Bell Rock where there are panoramic views across Hawke's Bay.

2.3.9 Important Unprotected Areas (see also Sections 3.2 and 3.5.4)

Areas with important natural values remain unprotected and vulnerable in the area.

The Stage one PNAP survey identified (in no particular order) key areas/habitats for protection in the Maungaharuru Ecological District. (See Bibliography).

- Tussocks grasslands and herbfields.
- Forest on alluvial terraces.
- Wetlands.
- Archaeological sites.
- Upland forests and fernlands.
- Beech forests.
- Geomorphic landscape features.
- Woodlands.
- Lowland native communities (forests, shrublands, fernland, herbfields, riparian communities).

The following sites were identified as the biggest or best (most important for protection):

- Crest of Maungaharuru Range - for its distinctive "cloud-cap" forests, red tussock grasslands and high landscape values.
- Flanks of Mohaka River - important riparian forest areas.

2.3.10 Management Objectives

- i To protect the natural and historic values of the areas managed by the Department, primarily through:
 - * Fire prevention and control
 - * Animal pest control - priority will be given to continued possum control in reserves, maintenance of close co-operation with the Hawke's Bay Regional Council regarding its possum operations, maintenance of existing fencing and fencing of any non-fenced areas as necessary, and a continuation of the programme to eliminate goats or reduce their numbers to low levels. This will be done in liaison with adjoining landowners (see also Section 3.4.4).
 - * Weed control - priority will be given to monitoring and eradication of any *Clematis vitalba* found on or adjacent to lands managed by the Department, and to further investigations into control of hydrilla in Lake Opouahi by the most benign method available (see Section 3.4.5).
- ii To seek protection of areas and habitats with high natural or historic values not managed by the Department, through statutory processes, through implementation of the PNAP recommendations, and by liaison and co-operation with other landowners. (see also Section 3.5.4.2).

(continues)

Particular areas of importance include:

- * The crest of range ("cloud-cap" forests, red tussock areas);
 - * The vegetation sequence from the crest of the range to the Mohaka River;
 - * Riparian areas, particularly along the Mohaka River;
 - * Mixed podocarp/beech/broadleaf forests at lower altitudes;
 - * Wetlands.
- iii To protect the soil and water conservation and water quality values of the areas managed by the Department, primarily by animal pest control and fire prevention.
- iv To endeavour to protect the soil and water conservation and water quality values of areas not managed by the Department, by advocating the protection of riparian vegetation and the protection of remaining forested catchments, through statutory processes and liaison with local authorities and other landowners. (See also Sections 3.3 and 3.9).
- v To advocate the protection of rivers, streams and wetlands with high natural, historic or recreation values, by statutory and non-statutory processes.
- vi To maintain riparian margins and marginal strips for their present and potential natural, soil and water conservation and public access values, by the measures outlined in detail in Section 2.4.10 (objective vii).
- vii To advocate protection, or appropriate management, of the remaining unprotected areas on the crest of the Maungaharuru Range, in order to retain its distinctive landscape character.
- viii To seek an integrated approach¹⁴ to land management in the area, irrespective of ownership, in co-operation with other landowners and local authorities.
- ix To manage Wāitere Kiwi Conservation Area primarily to protect its kiwi population, by:
- * Wild animal and fire control;
 - * Controls on public use if necessary;
 - * Prohibiting dogs in the reserve, except where specifically permitted for management purposes (regulations will be sought to enforce this¹⁵);
 - * Encouraging greater public awareness of the importance and vulnerability of the kiwi population in Waitere, especially amongst surrounding landowners and recreational users of the area.

(continues)

¹⁴ See Section 2.4.7.

¹⁵ This prohibition will not apply to seeing-eye dogs, police dogs or dogs used for search and rescue purposes.

- x To review the status of Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area, and to proceed to alter it if necessary. (See also Section 3.7).
- xi To undertake wildlife surveys and monitoring programmes in the area to improve knowledge of the presence and conservation status of wildlife; in particular, North Island kaka, North Island brown kiwi, and native snails. (see also Sections 3.5.2 and 3.5.3).
- xii To continue liaison with owners of exotic forests and other landowners to ensure that legal public access to areas managed by the Department is maintained and enhanced where necessary, and also liaise over any other conservation-related matters, in particular, fire prevention and control, protection of landscape values and habitat protection.
- xiii To maintain existing tracks and walks to appropriate standards. (See Appendix 11).
- xiv To endeavour to enhance appropriate public access along the Maungaharuru Range, in liaison with other landowners.
- xv To provide interpretive (explanatory) information at roadends to the scenic reserves in the area.
- xvi To encourage the participation of local communities in conservation management and conservation initiatives in the area.

2.3.11 Specific Places Requiring More Detailed Discussion

To date, no specific areas managed by the Department within Maungaharuru have been identified as requiring further detailed discussion.

Section 2.4 LOWLANDS

*"Ka titiro whakamuri au
Ki nga parae o Heretaunga
Aue te ataahua hoki"*

2.4.1 Vision

The great forests, swamplands and river systems of the lowlands of the past are remembered by the people of the Conservancy.

This vision of the past is the inspiration for the future - for the protection of the few precious remnants and for the restoration of degraded areas.

2.4.2 Introduction

There are some 170 reserves, conservation areas, historic reserves and marginal strips scattered throughout the lowlands. (see Map Two). Most of the areas are relatively small.

Much of the lowland area is highly modified with dominant land uses being pastoral farming, horticulture, and more recently exotic forestry. Little remains of the great native forests which would have covered most of the land, and other natural habitats such as wetlands have also been greatly diminished. In terms of protecting biodiversity, the natural areas which remain are very important.



Mohi Bush Scenic Reserve - the areas managed by the Department in the lowlands are generally small, fragmented areas, surrounded by developed farmland. These areas are important "stepping stones" for wildlife.

The Department manages some 2950 hectares in the lowlands and this represents only a very small proportion of the landscape. There are large gaps in the protected areas network of protected areas and many areas are fragmented and isolated by developed land. Significant habitats, landscapes and historic sites are poorly represented or unrepresented.

Many areas of remnant forest, shrubland and wetland are in private ownership. Stage one of the PNAP of the lowlands is almost complete. Protection of areas with high natural values identified in PNAP surveys is a high priority in the Conservancy, as is protection of existing areas managed by the Department from animal and plant pests and inappropriate uses.

2.4.3 Physical Description

2.4.3.1 Topography

The lowlands area broadly consists of:

- i) Heretaunga Plains, Ruataniwha Plains and areas of extensive river terraces and coalescing fan surfaces in the Upper Manawatu catchment south of Norsewood.
- ii) Rolling to steep hill country.
- iii) Part of the Pohangina River valley, just to the west of the Ruahine Ranges.

The two major plains (Heretaunga and Ruataniwha) were formed by extensive deposition of alluvial gravels by the major rivers which cross them - the Tutaekuri, Ngaruroro and Tukituki rivers. The plains contain some of the best agricultural and horticultural land in Hawke's Bay and are therefore highly developed for these purposes with very few large natural areas now remaining. South of Norsewood, a former extensive plain area has been entrenched by the Manawatu River and its tributaries, leaving large discontinuous areas of flat elevated land. A very fertile area of alluvial soil surrounds the Manawatu River near Woodville.

Most of the remaining area north of Norsewood (the area northwest of Napier, west of SH50, and between the Tukituki River and the coast) is the remains of an elevated plateau, which in places is bounded by steep faces falling to rivers and streams below. Some of the plateau remnants have been tilted to form very distinctive landscape features such as Te Mata Peak.

The hill country south of Waipukurau has undergone considerable uplift and the landscape exhibits strong relative relief, as the road from Dannevirke to Weber and Herbertville so amply demonstrates. Land use over the hill country is predominantly extensive pastoralism, though exotic forestry is rapidly increasing.

Apart from the areas adjacent to Napier/Hastings and Porangahau there are no substantial areas of coastal plains. A series of coastal hills and plateaux extend along and inland from the coast. Although seldom rising above 600m they contrast sharply with the plains, particularly the limestone areas of the Maraetotara Plateau, Mt Kahuranaki and the Craggy Range.

2.4.3.2 Climate

The majority of the lowlands lie in the rain shadow of the North Island main divide. This results in a sunny climate with less wind than western areas, and typically warm summers and mild winters. It is, however, vulnerable to easterly weather systems, and occasional cyclonic events from this direction produce very heavy rainfall and strong winds. Variability in rainfall is a characteristic of the area, and dry spells are common between November and May. Areas in the south of the Conservancy (Norsewood south), inland areas and elevated coastal areas (eg. Maraetotara) generally have a cooler and wetter climate than the rest of the lowlands, although the area east of SH2 typically has dry summers.

2.4.3.3 Vegetation

Almost the entire lowlands, plains as well as hill country, used to be covered in a podocarp/hardwood forest with an abundance of ferns and vines. During the centuries of Maori occupation much of this was cleared, and European settlement and subsequent logging, farming and forestry activities have reduced it even further. What now remains is a scattering of tiny relics, a few in near-original condition, most highly modified, but all now immensely precious.

Other reminders of the forests of the past are in the scattering of trees on farmland - cabbage trees, totara, titoki, maire and karaka and low forests dominated by manuka, kanuka and bracken. All are refuges for native plant and animal life and have the capacity to regenerate. Few wetlands remain and of those only a small proportion are protected. Their vegetation is mostly highly modified, though native trees, shrubs, sedges, rushes, flaxes and aquatic herbs form communities in places. These are even more fragile than the forest remnants, and like them are important to native wildlife.

Among these remnants of native vegetation are several rare or biogeographically significant plants. These are listed below (in Section 2.4.6.2).

The main threats to the native vegetation of the lowlands are feral animals (possums, deer and goats), domestic stock, fires, weeds and expanding operations such as exotic forestry and pastoral farming.

2.4.4 History

2.4.4.1 Maori History

The area has a rich Maori heritage dating back seven or eight centuries. Archaeological evidence suggests that lowland Hawke's Bay has been settled from the earliest period in New Zealand's Maori history. Hawke's Bay provided an ideal location for settlement with its good climate, fertile soils, bushclad hills, large river valleys and abundant land and sea resources. Distribution of recorded sites shows a heavy concentration of settlement along the coast and along the major river valleys - Ngaruroro, Tutaekuri, Manawatu, Pohangina and Tukituki. Throughout the area are numerous pa sites, midden, burial sites and garden areas. There are comparatively few recorded Maori archaeological sites located on lands managed by the Department,

but four significant sites, Otatara Pa, Heipipi Pa, Whakaari, and Tiwaewae, are located on them.

According to Maori tradition this area was discovered by Maui Tikitiki a Taranga and his brothers. Successive waves of their descendants settled in Hawke's Bay, some from other parts of the Pacific and some from other parts of Aotearoa. The tangata whenua today are Ngati Kahungunu, Rangitane in the Tamaki nui a Rua (Dannevirke) area and Rangitane in the Manawatu.

The lowland area with its rich resources was favourable to settlement. This initially occurred on the coast but soon extended inland, especially up rivers and near inland lakes. By the time the Pakeha arrived much of the land had lost its forest cover, and there were Maori living throughout the lowlands.

2.4.4.2 Pakeha Influence

The introduction of pigs, Norwegian rats and potatoes by Captain Cook in the late 18th Century began great changes in Maori culture and economy. The subsequent arrival of whalers, traders and missionaries accelerated the process.

In the 1840's and 1850's graziers from the Wairarapa began to develop sheep stations, and European settlements became established at Clyde, Takapau, Napier, Taradale, Havelock North and Tikokino. Hastings township was established in 1873 on the railway line that was completed between Napier and Takapau in 1874.

By the 1860's much of the lowlands were in settler ownership, with pastoral farming dominant. Commercial orchards, horticulture and vineyards were developed later, further modifying the landscape and providing diversification in the agricultural sector. This diversification has continued in the plains areas until the present, but pastoral farming continues to be the dominant land use over much of the lowlands.

Recently exotic afforestation has become a permitted land use in many areas where it was previously restricted. This is likely to lead to a significant increase in plantings and may greatly alter the landscape character of some areas.

2.4.4.3 Actively Managed Historic Places

On lands managed by the Department in the lowlands there are currently five historic places included in the Conservancy's register of actively managed historic places (See Appendix 10 and Section 3.4.2).

2.4.5 Areas Managed by the Department

The Department manages some 2950 hectares in the lowlands in the following categories.

- 21 Scenic Reserves
- 8 Recreation Reserves
- 7 Local Purpose Reserves
- 43 Conservation Areas (Stewardship Areas)
- 3 Conservation Areas
- 46 Marginal Strips

- 3 Historic Reserves
- Conservancy Office Courthouse Reserve and Ongaonga Base

In addition it has some responsibility for a number of scenic and recreation reserves, and local purpose reserves which are controlled and managed by other authorities, (490 ha).

- 9 Recreation Reserves
- 6 Scenic Reserves
- 20 Local Purpose Reserves

The above areas are shown on maps T22, T23, T24, U21, U22, U23, U24 U20, U21, U22, U23, V24, W19, and W20, in Section 6, Volume II.

Covenants

There are currently six Protected Private Land (PPL's) Agreements and three conservation covenants in the lowland area covering some 104 hectares. (see Land Inventory, Section 7, Volume II). The number of covenants is likely to increase once the PNAP recommendations are implemented.

Protected Private Land Agreements

Covenant 1	Longridge Farms (10.7788 ha)
Covenant 2	A J Johanson (4.0127 ha)
Covenant 3	D G Gallien Trust (8.3310 ha)
Covenant 4	M Stewart (7.6760 ha)
Covenant 5	R E Hales (3.0860 ha)
Covenant 6	D Rowland (10.3468 ha)

Conservation Covenants

Covenant 7	Matai Moana (35 ha)
Covenant 8	Te Wairere (6.344 ha)
Covenant 9	Braehead (18.439 ha)
Covenant 16	Burgess Mistletoe (0.2 ha)
Covenant 17	(Nga Whenua Rahui Kawenata) Chase (4.74 ha)

Walkways (see Land Inventory Sheets - Section 7, Volume II).

Walkway 2 -	Tutira
Walkway 3 -	Tangoio -
Walkway 4 -	Te Mata Peak (not gazetted)
Walkway 5 -	Monckton
Walkway 8 -	Whakamaharatanga

Wildlife Refuges (see Land Inventory Sheets - Section 7, Volume II).

Wildlife Refuge 1 -	Tutira
Wildlife Refuge 2 -	Tukituki River
Wildlife Refuge 4 -	Horseshoe lake
Wildlife Refuge 5 -	Holts (Waikoau)
Wildlife Refuge 6 -	Gwavas (Puahanui Bush)
Wildlife Refuge 8 -	Hartree

2.4.6 Natural Values

Despite the lack of protected areas in the lowlands, what remains is highly significant for conservation. In terms of protecting biodiversity the lowlands contain a range of biological features not found elsewhere.

Seven Ecological Districts are included in the lowlands area - Maungaharuru, Waihua, Heretaunga, Eastern Hawke's Bay, Ruahine, Puketoi and Woodville (see Map Five). The majority of the lowlands area lies within the Heretaunga and Eastern Hawke's Bay Districts.

2.4.6.1 Landscape, Landform and Geological Features

Two sites of international scientific importance are included in a 1993 Geopreservation Inventory (Geological Society of NZ 1993 - See Bibliography). The Devil's Elbow plio-pleistocene sediments, situated 30km north of Napier, are unlikely to be damaged by human activity. The Poukawa pseudoflatiron is an extremely well defined landform of scientific/educational value. It is the only known occurrence of this feature in New Zealand and is considered to be moderately vulnerable to modification by humans.

Other distinctive landscape features include Te Mata Peak, Maraetotara Plateau, Mt Kahuranaki and the Craggy Range. The braided river sections of the Ngaruroro and to a lesser extent the Tukituki rivers have high landscape values and are significant because such features are rare in North Island rivers.

2.4.6.2 Important Habitats

- Forest Remnants - Scenic reserves such as Mohi Bush, White Pine Bush and Balls Clearing are prime examples of the lowland forests that once covered the area. They have high landscape, scenic, scientific/educational and wildlife values and are also important winter feeding areas for many birds. Although fragmented, these forest remnants provide the basis of wildlife corridors and "stepping stones" between protected areas in the Conservancy.
- Wetlands - (includes rivers, lakes, swamps).

* Rivers and Streams - The braided river sections of the Ngaruroro, and to a lesser extent the Tutaekuri and Tukituki Rivers, provide important and specialised habitats for wildlife that are rare in the North Island. They provide breeding and feeding habitats for a number of bird species confined to this habitat type, including banded dotterel, black-fronted dotterel, black-backed gull and South Island pied oystercatcher. The shingle riverbeds of Hawke's Bay provide the only North Island breeding sites for the South Island pied oystercatcher (Parrish, 1988).

A departmental survey (Parrish 1988) rated the Ngaruroro, Tutaekuri and Tukituki Rivers as having high value to wildlife (this is the second highest ranking of a 5 point scale from "outstanding" to "potential" (see Appendix 3)).

These braided rivers also have high scenic and landscape values as they meander through the lowland landscape. In addition they are the major conduits for aquatic life, physical materials (rock, gravel, silt) and water between the mountains and the sea. The numerous streams that feed these rivers are also an important and dynamic feature of the lowland landscape. Their natural values are often overlooked but they provide habitats for native fish and their means of passage around the landscape.

* Lakes and Swamps

Due to the long history of land settlement there are few wetland areas remaining, and most are modified by introduced plants or stock grazing. The wetlands remaining in the lowlands are highly significant for their intrinsic and wildlife values.

Important Freshwater Wetlands in the Lowlands Include:

- Lake Poukawa
- Lake Hatuma
- Pekapeka Swamp
- Lake Runanga
- Lake Oingo
- Hurimoana Swamp
- Lake Purimu
- Horseshoe Lake (Wildlife refuge)
- Lake Tutira (Wildlife refuge and Recreation Reserve)

Of the above only parts of Lake Tutira and Lake Hatuma are managed by the Department. Besides these large wetlands, there are smaller water bodies which contribute to the conservation of natural wetland features in the lowlands. Most of these are privately owned.

The shallow lakes and wetland have high natural value. They provide an important and diminishing habitat for the threatened Australasian bittern and breeding and moulting sites for other waterfowl such as NZ shoveller, paradise shelduck, crakes and rails. They also perform an important function in maintaining native fish and invertebrate habitats and contain native vegetation that is specialised to these wet sites.



Tukituki River, from the Te Mata Peak Walkway. The need for further land-based recreational opportunities close to urban areas is seen as important by the community.

2.4.6.3 Vegetation

Rare/endangered or biogeographically significant plants in the lowlands include:

- *Coprosma* sp. (unnamed) : shrub or small tree, significant leaves and violet drupes, restricted to vicinity of Takapau Plains (endangered).
- *Utricularia subsimilis*, *U. colensoi*, *U. vulcanica* : small water plants collected by William Colenso from the central and eastern North Island. Very little is known of them, and their status is indeterminate.
- *Bulbophyllum tuberculatum* : small rare epiphytic orchid.
- *Pleurosorus ruifolius* : small fern of limestone outcrops (rare).
- *Myosotis saxosa* : a small herb forming hoary rosettes, locally abundant on limestone but restricted and vulnerable.
- *Teucrium parvifolium* : rare, closely-branched small-leaved shrub that grows on the margins of open conifer forest, in tall scrub and on rock outcrops. Known only from a few sites.

- *Pittosporum obcordatum* : tangled small-leaved shrub or small tree probably once widely distributed throughout NZ on alluvial terraces but now rare. Until recently only one plant was known in Hawke's Bay (in a bend of the Tukituki River). A recent PNA Survey located six colonies in a valley east of Waipukurau and another further south (endangered).
- Mistletoes (*Tupeia antarctica*, *Ileostylus micranthus*, *korthalsella lindsayi*): small, cryptic parasitic plants becoming nationally rare. Known from only a few sites.
- *Myriophyllum robustum* : a water plant listed as vulnerable in NZ, formerly collected from Horseshoe Lake (in 1961) but probably now extinct there.
- Matagouri (*Discaria toumatou*): not threatened nationally, but known in only a few North Island sites now (one is at Porangahau).

2.4.6.4 Native Wildlife

Threatened species in the lowlands, which are considered as priority species for conservation action (see Appendix 2), include:

- Long-tailed bats (Balls Clearing, Inglis and Hutchinson Scenic Reserves)
- North Island brown kiwi (unconfirmed at Mangapukahu and Waipatiki)
- NZ pigeon (kereru)
- North Island kaka
- NZ dabchick
- Black-fronted tern
- Mole crickets (White Pine and Tangoio Scenic Reserves)
- Banded dotterel
- Australasian bittern¹⁶
- White heron¹⁶
- Caspian tern¹⁶
- Royal spoonbill¹⁶
- Crested grebe¹⁶ (no records - vagrant only)
- Native fish - banded kokopu, blue-gilled bully

As well, the lowland forest remnants provide valuable habitats for more common bush birds, or birds with regional significance such as tui, bellbird, rifleman and long-tailed cuckoo.

¹⁶ Threatened in New Zealand but secure in other parts of their range outside New Zealand.

2.4.7 Threats/Issues

- The lack of protected areas in the lowlands

The greatest challenge in the lowlands is to seek to achieve protection of important natural values as yet unprotected, and to obtain greater representation of important natural features on areas managed by the Department, or on other protected lands. As discussed in Sections 3.2.2.1 and 3.2.2.2 full PNAP surveys will be completed for all ecological districts in the lowlands.

- Protection of natural values in areas managed by the Department

Areas managed by the Department in the lowlands are small and fragmented. Despite this paucity of protected areas, what remains is highly significant for its biodiversity and for scientific and recreational purposes. Because of their significance the lowland reserves have a high priority in the Conservancy for plant and animal pest control programmes. (See Sections 3.4.4 and 3.4.5).

The priorities for possum and weed control programmes and protected species work are based on national rankings and also on specific local conservation perspectives or values. Exclusion of domestic stock by effective boundary fencing is a major task.

- Integrated Land Management

Most areas managed by the Department are small survivors of land development and settlement. Because of their smallness they are more vulnerable to outside influences. There has been a tendency in the past to manage these areas within their legal boundaries. Greater consideration needs to be given to maintaining and enhancing natural processes across all lands (integrated management) and of achieving corridors (eg. "stepping stones") in co-operation with other landowners. This is of great importance for the survival of native wildlife.

- Wetlands (the "forgotten habitats")

Few wetlands in Hawke's Bay are protected and protection of remaining areas is important. This can be achieved by purchase, private land agreements, and liaison with local authorities and landowners. Threats to the remaining wetlands in the Conservancy include, continuing drainage and reclamation, fire, grazing animals, introduced fish, plant pests (eg. willows) and pollution. Increased public awareness of the importance and vulnerability of wetlands is also essential.

- Braided River Habitats

As indicated in Section 2.4.6.1, the braided river habitats in the Conservancy have important natural values. Threats to these values include, vegetation encroachment (lupins, willows, broom, buddleja and gorse - see Section 3.4.5), recreational use (jet-boating, 4-wheel drive vehicles and trail bikes can disturb wildlife and their habitats), modifications to rivers (such as riverworks, shingle extraction, irrigation schemes and damming), and modification to riparian areas. It is essential that the Department works closely with local authorities and landowners to ensure that areas

with important natural values are protected, or the adverse effects of any developments which occur are mitigated.

- Landscape, Landform and Geological Features

Distinctive or scientifically important landforms may be threatened by a wide range of human activities, in particular, earthworks, quarrying, reclamations or other developments. Landscape values can be significantly altered by insensitive or inappropriate forestry development.

- Marginal Strips

There are forty-six marginal strips covering approximately 820 hectares managed by the Department in the lowlands. While many are unfenced, vulnerable to stock grazing and highly modified, others are clothed in regenerating forests or shrublands and are performing an important soil and water conservation role. All have the potential to regenerate if fenced and browsing animals excluded, and many have important public access values. Like wetlands, the important natural values of these areas are not widely appreciated.

- Public Awareness/Involvement

A wide range of skills, enthusiasm and expertise is available in the community. The support and involvement of local people in management of natural and historic resources is essential if the objectives outlined in this CMS are to be achieved. Co-ordination of the involvement of local people in conservation work is an important task of the Department (see also Section 3.9.4).

2.4.8 Public Use

Public use of lands managed by the Department in the lowlands varies greatly. The highest use areas are the scenic reserves near Napier/Hastings and the Central Hawke's Bay towns, where short walks, picnicking, and associated activities are popular.

In White Pine Bush Scenic Reserve a track suitable for use by people with varying physical disabilities, including those in wheelchairs, has been developed and is used extensively by family groups. Many areas, such as Mohi Bush or Inglis Scenic Reserves, have high scientific or educational values and are visited by school groups and researchers on a regular basis.

A range of facilities is provided in the scenic reserves, including tracks, picnic shelters, barbecue sites, toilets and information boards. The adequacy and appropriateness of existing facilities to meet the needs of visitors is being reviewed as part of the Conservancy Recreation Strategy. (see Section 3.8). Public comment received during preparation of this CMS indicates that many people are seeking further family recreational opportunities in areas managed by the Department close to urban areas.

Public use of smaller areas and marginal strips is generally low. Access is limited to many areas, there are few if any facilities provided and many marginal strips in particular are little known.

Co-operation with other authorities will continue to be important in the lowlands in the planning and provision of recreational opportunities (see Section 3.8).

2.4.9 Important Unprotected Areas (see also Sections 3.2 and 3.5.4)

Areas with important natural values remain unprotected and vulnerable in the lowlands. PNAP surveys of the lowland ecological districts have concluded that the protected areas network is inadequate both in its size and the representation of natural features. The two largest ecological districts (Heretaunga and Eastern Hawke's Bay) have by far the smallest total area of protected natural features, and therefore the greatest need for more protected areas occurs in them (see Map Five).

PNAP surveys have yet to be completed in some ecological districts, but within each surveyed ecological district, priority habitats or areas for protection have been listed. The survey recommendations note that, due to the lack of protected areas, every natural area remaining is worthy of consideration for protection. A full list of Recommended Areas for Protection (RAP's) in the ecological regions with completed surveys can be obtained from the appropriate PNAP report. (See Bibliography). The full list is not included in this document because the list is so extensive; a reflection of the current lack of protected areas in the lowlands.

However, key habitats requiring urgent protection can be identified. They include wetlands, braided river habitats, broadleaved forest remnants and riparian areas. The majority of the RAP's to date consist of forest remnants, which are small examples of the forests that once clothed the lowlands.

2.4.10 Management Objectives

- i To protect the natural and historic values of the areas managed by the Department, primarily through:
 - * Fire prevention and control.
 - * Animal pest control - the lowland (and Maungaharuru) reserves are the Conservancy's highest priority for possum control. Other priorities are, domestic stock exclusion (this requires maintenance of existing fencing, and where necessary, further fencing) and sustained control of the small feral goat populations that pose a threat to some areas (see Section 3.4.4).
 - * Weed control - priority will be given to the eradication of *Clematis vitalba* from any area where it is found, and to further investigations into control of hydrilla in Lake Tutira by the most benign method available (see Section 3.4.5).
- ii As a priority in the lowlands, to seek the protection of areas of high natural or historic value on lands not managed by the Department, through statutory processes, through implementation of PNAP recommendations and by ongoing liaison and co-operation with landowners.

(continues)

The key habitats are discussed in Section 2.4.9. Once PNAP surveys are complete for all ecological districts in the lowlands and the priority sites identified, implementation of legal protection for as many sites as possible will proceed (see also Section 3.2.2).

- iii To seek, whenever possible, integrated land management¹⁷ irrespective of ownership, in co-operation with other landowners and local authorities, in order to maintain any existing "ecological corridors" and to protect areas managed by the Department from threats originating from outside their boundaries.
- iv Reserves
- * To ensure that reserves (including those controlled and managed by other organizations) are managed for their primary purpose, as defined in the Reserves Act.
 - * To review the control and management of reserves (both those currently managed by the Department, and those currently managed by local authorities) and to ensure future control and management lies with the organizations best suited to managing the reserve for its primary purpose(s). (A list of reserves controlled and managed by other authorities and details of them is included in Volume II).
 - * As part of the above review, to examine the appropriateness of current reserve classifications.
- v Public use:(see 3.8 and 3.9)
- * To provide day-use facilities in local reserves (this includes roadend information boards for reserves).
 - * To maintain, and enhance where necessary or appropriate, public access to areas managed by the Department, and make information available on the rights and responsibilities of visitors regarding access over private lands.
 - * To allow recreational hunting in areas managed by the Department by permit only.
 - * As part of the Conservancy's Recreation Strategy, to investigate further recreational opportunities on lands managed by the Department close to urban areas (see Section 3.8.3).
 - * To encourage other agencies (in particular, local authorities) to provide access to, and facilities and recreational opportunities close to urban areas, through statutory processes and through ongoing liaison with the appropriate authorities.

(continues)

¹⁷ See section 2.4.7.

vi Wetlands (includes rivers, lakes, swamps)

- * To protect wetlands and lakes within areas managed by the Department.
- * To advocate and encourage protection or rehabilitation of important lakes and wetlands on private lands, and a complementary network of smaller areas by statutory and non-statutory processes.

(The key sites are listed in Section 2.4.6.2, but there are many smaller areas with important wetland features).

- * To advocate the protection of rivers, streams, wetlands and their margins with high natural values, by statutory and non-statutory processes.
- * To advocate the protection and/or sustainable management of water resources generally, through input into policies and plans of local authorities and by general public awareness programmes. (see Sections 3.3 and 3.9).

vii Marginal Strips

- * To maintain marginal strips for their present and potential natural and soil and water conservation values by:
 - Determining the priority areas for fencing based on natural values at risk and the practicality of fencing;
 - Fencing priority areas, as resources allow;
 - Plant and animal pest control in priority areas.
- * To increase public awareness of the importance of marginal strips for their natural and public access values.
- * To make information available on public access to marginal strips in the Conservancy, where appropriate and in liaison with other landowners.
- * As a long-term goal, to encourage community involvement in protection and restoration of marginal strips.

2.4.11 Specific Places Requiring More Detailed Discussion

Two areas have been identified in the lowlands as requiring more detailed discussion in this CMS, because of unresolved or complex management issues or high public interest. The two areas, Otatara Pa and Heipipi Pa Historic Reserves, are discussed below.

2.4.11.1 Heipipi Pa and Otatara Pa Historic Reserves

2.4.11.1.1 Introduction

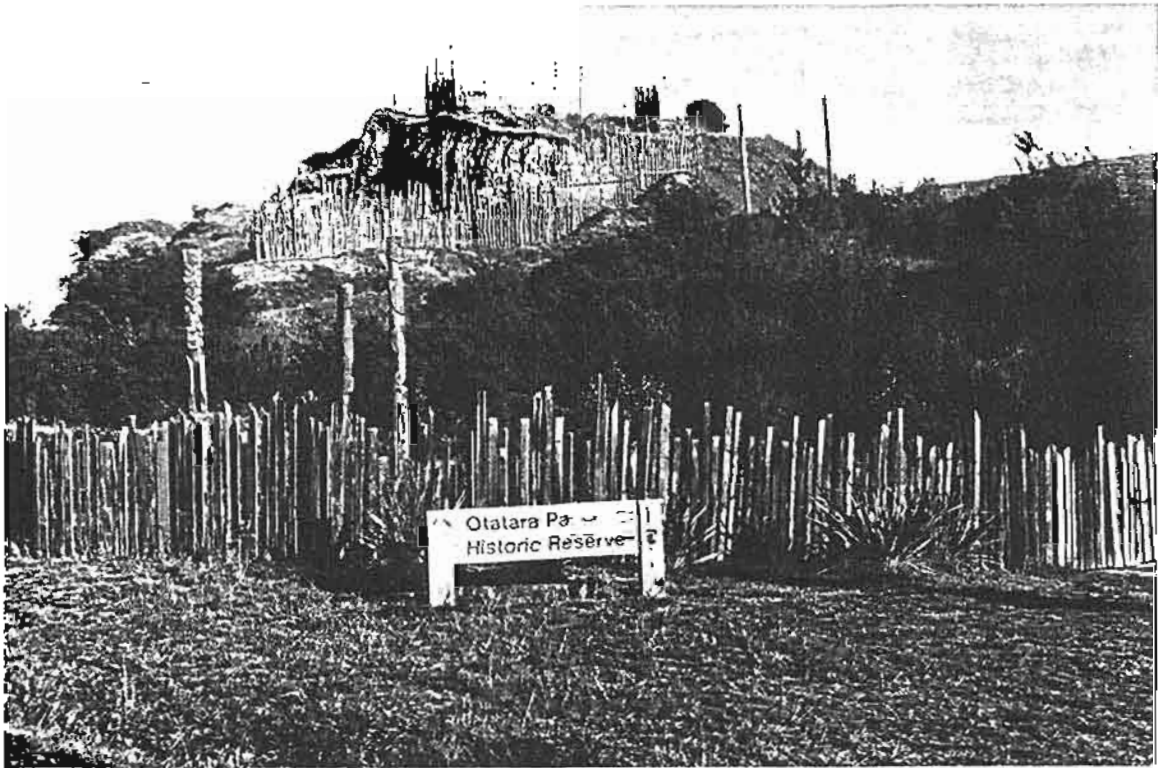
Otatara Pa and Heipipi Pa are sites of considerable historic significance which are managed by the Department in conjunction with tangata whenua. Both pa are amongst the oldest of Hawke's Bay settlement sites.

Otatara Pa is one of the largest and most impressive of the many pa in Hawke's Bay. It is situated on the true left of the Tutaekuri River, overlooking Taradale (see Map V21, Section 6, Volume II). The Reserve covers 33 hectares, and incorporates both Otatara Pa (on the lower part of the hill which has been extensively quarried), and Hikurangi Pa. Numerous pits and terraced house sites have been built among the hills, and apart from the quarried section are in good condition. There are expansive views over Hawke's Bay from the site.

The settlement commonly known as Otatara was occupied in very early times by the immediate descendants of Toi kai rakau. They co-existed peacefully as the tribes of Mahu, Hatupuna, Hotuwaipare, Ngai Tara, and Whatumamoe. They were later joined by the descendants of a son of Toi called Awanui a rangi. Their leader Koaupari was responsible for the fortification of both this pa site and Heipipi. Rangitane and Ngati Ira also settled in the area.

Several generations later a section of Ngati Kahungunu under Taraia sought to establish themselves as overlords of the area. Taraia attacked the Hikurangi and Otatara Pa. Hikurangi fell but Otatara Pa was held by the chiefs Hikanui, Whatupounamu and Paretararoa. The chief was Turauwha at this time. A truce was called and Taraia returned to Wairoa for reinforcements. On seeing the size of Taraia's returning army the people of Otatara left the area. Turauwha later returned and an agreement was reached where he retained his right to remain on the land. His descendants intermarried with Ngati Kahungunu and were still in occupation of the pa during the lifetime of Rangitohumare twelve generations ago.

Heipipi Pa is situated on a hill top above Bay View, north of Napier. Like Otatara it is one of the oldest pa in Hawke's Bay. The site contains remains of pits, house sites and a defensive bank, some of which are not included in the reserve. Heipipi was occupied by Te Tini a Awa, Whatumamoe, and Maruiwi. It too was attacked by Taraia without success. A truce was made and Taraia moved on.



Otatara Pa - one of the largest and most impressive of the many pa in Hawke's Bay. Interpretation facilities and tracks have been developed to enhance public appreciation of the area.

2.4.11.1.2 Management

Prior to the formation of the Department of Conservation, Otatara Pa Historic Reserve was managed by the Otatara Pa Historic Reserve Board and administered by the Department of Lands and Survey in conjunction with the Historic Places Trust.

Heipipi Pa was purchased by the Department in May 1990 for protection as an Historic Reserve under the Reserves Act.

Both pa are archaeological sites and therefore no developments or modifications are allowed without the prior approval of the Historic Places Trust (Section 11 or 12 of the Historic Places Act 1993). Over and above their classifications as archaeological sites both pa have been declared traditional sites, in accordance with the Historic Places Act.

Tangata whenua are involved in all aspects of management and in any decisions affecting the two sites.

There is a current management plan for Otatara Pa Historic Reserve but not for Heipipi Pa Historic Reserve. The current plan for Otatara Pa requires revision because its provisions do not adequately cover all current management issues.

Both pa are included in the Conservancy's register of actively managed historic places. (see Appendix 10 and Section 3.4.2).

2.4.11.1.3 Management Issues

There are a number of issues relating to management of the two historic reserves:

i Preservation of Archaeological/Historic Values

Preservation of the sites' archaeological values is the primary management objective, and any other use of the reserves must be consistent with this.

The Waiohiki Marae Committee currently has a proposal to use the Otatara Pa Historic Reserve for a range of traditional and contemporary cultural activities. The focus of their proposals is the already highly modified "quarry" area. Any formal consents for activities will need to take account of the over-riding requirement for the protection of archaeological and historical values.

ii Public Access

Due to its historic significance and location close to Napier, Otatara Pa Historic Reserve is used by many people. On-site and road-end interpretation facilities and tracks have been developed to facilitate this use. Close monitoring of use and impacts is necessary to ensure that historic values are not compromised.

Access to Heipipi Pa Historic Reserve is off SH2 and Hill Road but there are no interpretation or roadend facilities as at Otatara Pa Historic Reserve. Any developments would be undertaken in close liaison with tangata whenua.

iii Grazing/Weed Control

Grazing leases are pending over both sites. Appropriate grazing regimes perform a management function and will be continued, subject to protection of historic values.

iv Adjoining Land Management

Activities on adjoining lands can impact on the historic values of the two sites. Recently, the Department received proposals to erect radio transmitters on land adjacent to the Otatara Pa Historic Reserve. These applications were opposed as it was considered they would have negatively impacted on historic values of the area.

There are also parts of both pa that are on private land. These areas are also protected under the Historic Places Act.

v Partnership with tangata whenua

The two reserves are managed in association with tangata whenua. Although local Marae are Kaitiaki of the reserves for Ngati Kahungunu, they have significance beyond the immediate area. It is important that the views of a wide range of Maori are taken into account in the management of the reserves.

2.4.11.1.4 Management Objectives

- i To manage in association with tangata whenua the Heipipi Pa and Otatara Pa Historic Reserves for the purpose of preserving their historic values.
- ii Consistent with above, to facilitate public access and enjoyment of the reserves.
- iii If appropriate, to permit applications for developments which will not impact on the historic values of the reserves.
- iv To prohibit earthworks or construction of any buildings on the reserves, other than facilities to aid visitor access and interpretation of them.
- v To provide, in consultation and with the assistance of tangata whenua, appropriate road-end and on-site interpretation facilities to enhance public appreciation of the significance of the reserves.
- vi To encourage appropriate educational use of the reserves.
- vii To advocate appropriate adjoining land uses to protect the historic values of the reserves.
- viii To issue grazing licences where conservation objectives will be achieved and there will be no adverse impact on historic values. Where licences are granted, to closely monitor them to ensure that conditions of the licence are met (see Section 3.6.3.1).
- ix To control weeds in the reserves where they impact on historic values or restrict public access.
- x To allow and co-operate in appropriate restoration/revegetation programmes which will not impact on historic values.
- xi In association with tangata whenua, and in close consultation with the Historic Places Trust, to prepare a Conservation Management Plan (CMP) for Otatara Pa and Heipipi Pa Historic Reserves.

Section 2.5 COASTAL

*"Ara nga koi iwi o aku tipuna
Me nga unga o taku waka Takitimu"*

2.5.1 Vision

The natural character of the Hawke's Bay coastline, with its sweeping beaches, cliffs and important estuarine areas, is maintained and enhanced. Only sensitive uses and developments which are in harmony with nature will occur.

2.5.2 Introduction

This group covers a number of conservation areas and marginal strips and one nature reserve (Cape Kidnappers) located on or adjacent to the coast (above Mean High Water Springs - MHWS). It includes the Ahuriri Estuary conservation areas. However, these represent only a tiny fraction of the natural values of the Hawke's Bay coast.

The Department has some responsibilities for the coast generally (beyond protected areas), as set out in the Resource Management Act 1991 (see Section 3.3.3).



The northern Hawke's Bay coastline near Moeangiangi, with its steep cliffs and sweeping beaches. This part of the Conservancy is almost totally devoid of protected areas. Any native vegetation remnants are a high priority for protection in this area.

2.5.3 Physical Description

2.5.3.1 Topography

The coastal environment of the Hawke's Bay Conservancy comprises the southern portion of the curve of Hawke Bay (all that south of the Waikari River) and the exposed coast from Cape Kidnappers south to the mouth of the Waimata River, near Cape Turnagain. The total length of the coastline is approximately 197 km.

The coastal landscape is often dramatic and of high scenic value. The Hawke Bay shoreline alternates between cliffed uplifted tracts and the steep shingle beaches of the Heretaunga Plains. South of Cape Kidnappers the coast is backed by steep mudstone hills. Cliffs occur at Taupata, Kairakau and Cape Turnagain where the softer mudstones are capped by limestone. At Porangahau an extensive longshore bar encloses a long shallow estuary. Major dune systems occur at Rangaiika, Ocean Beach, Waimarama, Porangahau and Herbertville. The only true island in the Conservancy is Motu-o-Kura (Bare Island). This small Maori owned island is situated approximately 1.6 km off Waimarama.

Coastal features of geological interest include the Moeangiangi earthquake slip, Cape Kidnappers, Red Island and Hinemahanga Rocks (Kairakau), fossil formations at Pourerere and rare fossil crabs at Cape Turnagain.

2.5.3.2 Climate

For an outline of climate refer to Section 2.4.3.2, in the lowlands section.

2.5.3.3 Vegetation

Forests of broadleaved trees, nikau palms and podocarps (totara, matai and kahikatea) would have come down to the sea in many places in the past - even on cliffs and sand dunes. These forests were modified considerably by Maori occupation as the entire coastline was settled early on and provided a focus for habitation from that time. In addition, the coastal margins were actively cultivated. The presence today of trees such as karaka and cabbage tree, which are indicators of former plantings, are reflections of that. The few forest remnants that remain are very significant but none are as yet protected, either physically or legally. Remnants of coastal forest persist in areas such as Waipatiki, Cape Kidnappers and Cape Turnagain. Cliffs and dune systems and estuaries provide habitats for other distinctive coastal vegetation types.

Sandy shores are mostly clothed in low vegetation dominated by marram grass (an exotic plant). However, there are still some dunes in which the native sandbinders, spinifex and pingao persist, along with sand coprosma and some smaller native species adapted to this environment. These are sites of high natural value but are vulnerable to domestic stock, feral animals and off-road vehicles.

Moeangiangi slip, a huge earthquake feature on the northern coast, has a dense clothing of scrub and low forest, which is predominantly manuka and tauhinu. With effective control of feral goats and possums, it has the potential to become the best example of coastal forest in the Conservancy.

The estuaries support a variety of native plant associations including saltmarsh herbfields, rushlands, sedgelands, shrub margins and pastureland, depending on wetness and salinity. Gravel shores have been highly modified and support low growing communities of exotic herbs, grasses and shrubs. There are still a few native plants, though, including the regionally rare creeper *Muehlenbeckia ephedroides*, known in the Conservancy only at Te Awanga.

Motu o Kura has a dense cover of wharariki (coastal flax) on its eastern flank. Elsewhere it is too steep and eroding to support much vegetation.

2.5.4 History

2.5.4.1 Maori

People have lived on the entire Hawke's Bay coast for centuries. The coastline contains many sites of archaeological/cultural interest. Distribution of recorded sites shows a heavy concentration of settlement along the coast. Many other sites have been destroyed through urban and agricultural development.

Numerous pa sites occur along the coastline. The transpeninsular route across Cape Kidnappers and along sandy stretches of Rangaiika, Ocean Beach, Waimarama, Porangahau and Herbertville are particularly rich in Maori archaeological remains. In addition to these areas many other sites are of cultural significance, as traditional food gathering areas, sources of cultural materials, or as places of important historical or legendary events.

2.5.4.2 Pakeha

Settlement of Hawke's Bay was initially confined to the coast and transport routes were developed along beaches, or along the cliffs. Remains of these routes are still visible in places and portions now form the basis of walkways. As the hinterland was developed for farming, landing places were established for transfer of goods and stock to ships. Whaling stations were also established at Tangoio, Rangaiika, Waimarama and Taupata. Farms, settlements, roads and industries have been established on the coast. These developments greatly modified the natural vegetation of the coastline.

2.5.4.3 Actively Managed Historic Places

On lands managed by the Department in the coastal area there are currently no historic places included in the Conservancy's register of actively managed historic places (see Appendix 10 and Section 2.4.2).

2.5.5 Lands Managed by the Department

The Department manages some 708 hectares of land on or adjacent to the coast. The areas are shown on maps V20, V21, V23, V24, W20, W21, and W22 in Section 6, Volume II.

Areas Managed by the Department

Land Inventory Number	Name	Hectares
80016.1	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	306.61
80016.2	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	3.76
80016.3	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	98.29
80016.4	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	12.35
80016.5	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	67.69
80020	Te Kuta Recreation Reserve	5.50
80043	Westshore Domain Recreation Reserve (Past gazetted wildlife refuge)	50.18
80058	Grange Road Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	0.35
80069	Earthquake Slip Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	93.88
80086	Whakaari Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	9.74
80098	Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve	12.90
80100	Upoko Block Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	18.60
80112	Haumoana Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	0.07
80113	Blackhead Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	10.31
80116	Pourerere Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	0.84
80204	Waipatiki Beach Marginal Strip	2.62
80215	Waipuku Beach Marginal Strip	14.88

Covenants - Rangitoto Pa (in preparation)

Walkways - Walkway 6 - Coastal (Aropaoanui to Waikari River) - see Land Inventory Sheets in Section 7, Volume II.

Wildlife Refuges(see Land Inventory Section 7, Volume II).

Wildlife Refuge 3 - Ahuriri

Wildlife Refuge 7 - Ngauroro Rivermouth

2.5.6 Natural Values

Although most of the coastline is highly modified, important natural values remain. However, few are protected and all are vulnerable to human activities and plant and animal pests.

2.5.6.1 Important Natural Areas in the Coastal Environment

A number of areas with important natural values have been identified in the Conservancy's coastal environment. The priority areas, given current knowledge, are described in Appendix 4.

Important areas include:

- Rangaiika and Ocean Beach support dune systems which contain the last significant populations of the threatened native sandbinder plant pingao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*) in Hawke's Bay. Smaller populations occur at Cape Turnagain, Porangahau and Taits Beach.
- The Ahuriri, Waitangi and Porangahau estuaries are recognised as wildlife areas of national significance, providing roosting, feeding and breeding areas

for common and rare coastal species and they are important feeding grounds for native fish species.

- Cape Kidnappers is one of the world's most accessible mainland gannet colonies and a site of considerable geological significance. The Cape Kidnappers cliffs are included as a site of international scientific importance, in a Geopreservation Inventory prepared in 1993 by the Geological Society of New Zealand (See Bibliography).
- Motu o Kura (Bare Island) is a breeding ground for blue penguins, sooty shearwaters, shags and black-backed gulls.
- The Waipatiki Beach cliffs are included as a site of international scientific importance in the Geological Society of New Zealand's Geopreservation Inventory (See above).
- The Kairakau cliffs are one of the hardest cliff systems in Hawke's Bay, and sustain a complex and mature vegetation, including ferns, flaxes and a great variety of coastal shrubs. The rare renga lily is found on the northern end of these cliffs.
- Karamea (Red Island) and Kairakau rocks are examples of submarine volcanic activity, with characteristic pillow lava formations.

2.5.6.2 Significant Plants

Although much of the coastline is highly modified a number of threatened or biogeographically significant plants remain, or could remain. They include:

- *Pimelea arenaria*: A small daphne which occurs occasionally on sand-dunes along the coast. Becoming depleted throughout New Zealand.
- Pingao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*): found at various sites on sand-dunes (eg, Rangaiika, Ocean Beach, Porangahau, Cape Turnagain). Depleted and vulnerable throughout NZ.
- Cooks scurvy grass (*Lepidium oleraceum*): recorded from Black Reef in the past, but probably now extinct. Very rare on mainland New Zealand.
- *Plantago picta*: a small rosette-forming coastal herb, rare in NZ. Formerly collected by William Colenso, probably from papa cliffs. Not currently known in Hawke's Bay, but could still exist.
- Renga lily (*Arthropodium cirratum*): Known on the coast between Wellington and East Cape only at Kairakau.
- *Muehlenbeckia ephedroides*: Creeper now rare in North Island but still found at Te Awanga.
- Matagouri (*Discaria toumatou*): Rare in North Island but found at Porangahau.

- *Chionochloa flavicans*: Cliff tussock found only on the eastern coast of the North Island.
- *Senecio banksii*: Herbaceous shrub found only on lime-rich rock faces in Hawke's Bay and East Coast.

2.5.6.3 Wildlife

Threatened wildlife, considered as priority species for conservation action (see Appendix 2) include: wrybill, NZ dotterel, variable oystercatcher, NZ dabchick, black-fronted tern and banded dotterel. Species which are threatened in New Zealand but secure in other parts of their range outside New Zealand include: white heron, reef heron, caspian tern and royal spoonbill.

In addition, the coastal environment provides an important habitat for a range of other more common birds or wildlife of regional significance, such as lizards and invertebrates.

The gannet colonies at Cape Kidnappers also have national significance in that they are the largest and most accessible mainland breeding colony in New Zealand.

2.5.5.4 Historic Values

The coastal area of Hawke's Bay was the first area to be settled and the most densely populated due to abundant food resources, and this is reflected in the concentration of historic sites along it. Records of sites can be obtained from the Hawke's Bay Archaeological Site Register.

2.5.7 Issues and Threats

The coast is conspicuous for its lack of protected areas, and as such many very important natural and historic values are threatened.

Prevalent threats along the coastline are erosion accelerated by deforestation and hinterland farming, stock grazing on sensitive or regenerating vegetation, disturbance and reduction of habitat by recreational pressure or subdivision, competition by exotic plants, littering and reduced water quality. Introduced animals threatening the natural fauna and flora of the coast include goats, possums, rabbits, rats, dogs, cats and mustelids.

Exotic forestry is rapidly increasing in Hawke's Bay. Afforestation of coastal margins would greatly affect natural and historic values and alter the natural character of the coastline.

Due to the lack of protected areas on the coastline and the threats to these and other areas, it is essential that the Department maintains a close liaison with local authorities during preparation of regional policies and plans and district plans, to ensure that conservation issues are fully considered and adequate controls are incorporated into these planning documents.

2.5.8 Public Use

Parts of the coastline receive very high recreational use, particularly during the summer months when Hawke's Bay traditionally experiences hot, dry weather conditions. In some areas this use has damaged areas with high natural and historic values (eg, trail bike use on sand dunes at Ocean Beach).

Predominant activities are swimming, picnicking, fishing, shellfish gathering and walking. High-use areas are beaches close to Napier/Hastings and the Central Hawke's Bay towns. The Cape Kidnappers/Clifton area has an international profile because of the popular gannet tours and receives high public use, especially from the end of October to the end of June when the Plateau Colony is open to visitors.

2.5.9 Important Unprotected Areas (see also Sections 3.2 and 3.5.4)

As indicated in Section 2.5.6, areas with important natural values remain unprotected and vulnerable in the coastal environment. Appendix 4 identifies fourteen such areas, several of which are situated above MHWS.

PNAP surveys have identified that in the coastal environment generally there is a lack of protected areas. Key features/habitats along the coastline requiring protection include (in no particular order):

- Coastal beach systems;
- Coastal steeplands (including sea cliffs and scarps);
- Estuaries and lagoons;
- Coastal scrub (especially tauhinu, *Olearia solandri* and matagouri);
- Coastal broadleaved forests (especially karaka);
- Historic sites.

The biggest or best sites identified (again, in no particular order) include:

i Heretaunga Ecological District

- Ahuriri-Tangoio coastal flats and wetlands.

ii Eastern Hawke's Bay Ecological District

- Ocean Beach and Rangaiika sand systems, coastal flats and scarps;
- Cape Kidnappers scrublands;
- Porangahau estuary dunes and coastal flats;
- Cape Turnagain cliffs, dunes and pa sites;
- Karamea (Red Island).

iii Waihua Ecological District

To date, only a Stage One survey of this area has been completed, and key sites have yet to be identified.

2.5.10 Management Objectives (see also Section 3.3.3)

- i To protect the natural and historic values of areas managed by the Department, primarily through:
 - * fire prevention and control;
 - * weed control - problem weeds include boxthorn, marram and *Clematis vitalba*;
 - * animal pest control - priorities remain the control of possums and goats in coastal reserves and the fencing of reserves where necessary to prevent stock (especially goat) trespass.
- ii To advocate the protection and enhancement of areas and habitats with high natural or historic values on lands not managed by the Department; in particular, coastal wetlands, sand dunes, estuaries, coastal steeplands, remnant coastal forest and historic sites. (see also Section 3.5.4.2).
- iii To encourage and co-ordinate native revegetation programmes along the coast.
- iv To endeavour to ensure that appropriate provisions are inserted in regional policies and plans and district plans, in order to prevent inappropriate uses of coastal lands and to achieve integrated management of marine and terrestrial ecosystems. Close attention will be given to subdivisions, exotic forestry, water quality, and vehicle use and stock grazing in sensitive sand-dune or coastal forest areas.
- v To advocate the maintenance and enhancement of legal public access to the coast where this is appropriate.
- vi To encourage other agencies (in particular, local authorities) to provide appropriate access to, and facilities and recreational opportunities on the coast generally, through statutory advocacy and continued liaison with the appropriate agencies.
- vii To promote greater public awareness and appreciation of the values of, and threats to, the coastal environment.

2.5.11 Specific Places Requiring More Detailed Discussion

Two areas have been identified in the coastal area as requiring more detailed discussion in this CMS because of unresolved or complex management issues or high public interest. The two areas (Ahuriri Estuary and Cape Kidnappers) are discussed below.

2.5.11.1 Ahuriri Estuary

2.5.11.1.1 Introduction

Ahuriri Estuary is a 450 ha remnant of the original 3800 ha lagoon - Te Whanganui a Orotu. The 1931 Napier earthquake lifted the bed of the lagoon between 1.5 and 3.4 m and exposed some 1300 ha of its bed. Various reclamations have subsequently reduced the area to its present size. (see Map Three).

Although Ahuriri has been extensively modified by natural and human activities it is still one of the most significant estuaries in the North Island, providing a habitat for large numbers of birds, fish and mud dwelling fauna. As well as resident birds it provides a food source and shelter for both internal and inter-continental migratory birds. It has been put forward for inclusion in the Oceania Wetland Inventory.

In addition to its natural significance the estuary and surrounds are extensively used by local people for watersports, walking, picnicking and bird watching. It is a particularly important area for education, because of its location within Napier City.

Residential and industrial areas, farmland and the Napier airport surround the estuary.

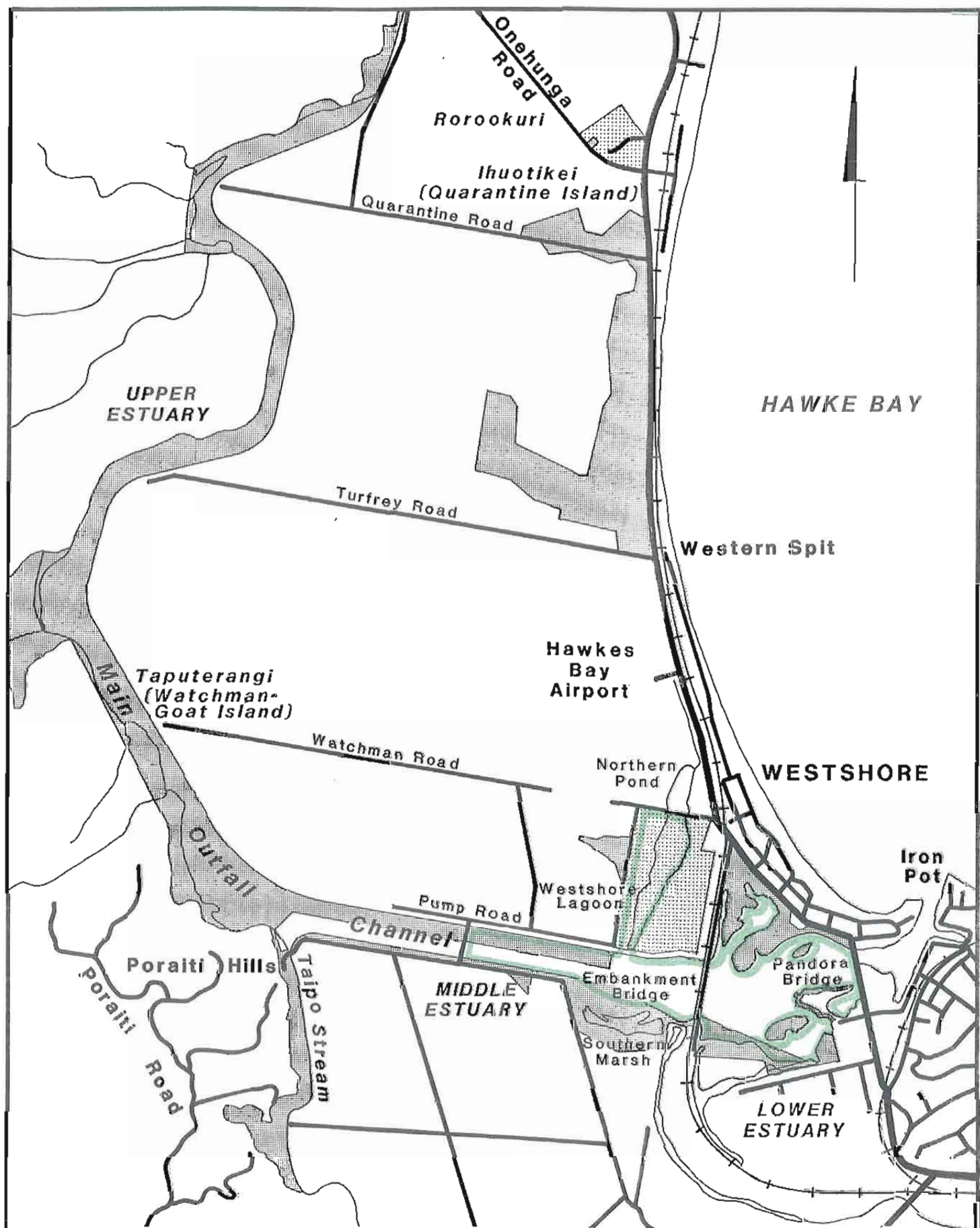
2.5.11.1.2 Management

In recent years conflicts have arisen over the various, often incompatible, uses of the area and over its future management.

Because of its nationally significant natural values the Department supports protection of the remaining natural habitats and character of the area and the removal of any threats to these values. There are competing demands on the estuary from recreational users, industrial development, marina proposals and motorway developments, all of which pose threats to these natural values.

The estuary and surrounds are controlled and managed by a number of authorities: Napier City Council, Hastings District Council, Hawke's Bay Regional Council, Port of Napier Ltd, Napier Airport Authority, Landcorp Farming Ltd and the Department of Conservation.

The various local and central government agencies, plus local Maori people and environmental groups, formed a steering committee in 1989. This committee was responsible for preparing a management plan to try and resolve some of the conflicts over the future of the area. A draft plan was released for comment in December 1991, and a final plan released in September 1992. This plan is not a statutory document but is intended to provide direction and guidance to the various agencies as they prepare policies and plans under the Resource Management Act and other legislations. This includes this CMS prepared under the Conservation Act. The Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board has requested that the Department include the objectives of the Ahuriri Estuary Management Plan in this CMS, with several exclusions (see below).



**Ahuriri Estuary
Areas Managed by Dept. of Conservation**

- Conservation Area**
- Recreation Reserve**
(Controlled and Managed by Napier C.C.)
- Wildlife Refuge**

0 1 2 3 4 km.

The Department was involved extensively throughout the preparation of the above management plan and supports the majority of objectives and policies outlined in it. However, both the Department and the Board oppose the proposal to consider expanding Pandora Pond to provide additional water space for recreation (Policy 2.5.4(8)-Ahuriri Estuary Management Plan) because it could impact significantly on the natural values of the estuary. The Department and the Board consider that there are alternative, and less environmentally sensitive, areas outside the estuary for water sports.

2.5.11.1.3 Areas Managed by the Department

The Department currently manages some 488 hectares of the estuary and its surrounds. In addition Napier City Council controls and manages part of the area (see below). The Department has responsibilities for protected animals in all areas.

Land Inventory Number	Name	Hectares
80016	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	488.70
80016.1	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	306.6120
80016.2	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	3.76
80016.3	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	98.29
80016.4	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	12.35
80016.5	Ahuriri Estuary Conservation Area (Stewardship Area)	67.79
80043	Westshore Domain Recreation Reserve (part gazetted wildlife refuge and controlled and managed by Napier City Council)	50.10

Recent legislation (1991)¹⁸ will result in changes to ownership and control of some areas. The Crown has resumed control of several areas below MHWS under the Foreshore and Seabed Endowment Revesting Act 1991. These areas were previously vested in local authorities.

While the Department of Survey and Land Information (DOSLI) has responsibility for land vested in the Crown under the Foreshore and Seabed Endowment Revesting Act 1991, the Act will be administered by the Department of Conservation, and the Minister of Conservation is given particular statutory functions under the Act.

Under the Harbour Boards Dry Lands Endowment Revesting Act (HBDLER) 1991, some other areas (above MHWS) have recently been vested in the Crown and will be managed by the Department.

¹⁸ *Harbour Boards Dry Lands Endowment Revesting Act 1991, and Foreshore and Seabed Revesting Act 1991.*

The Hawke's Bay Regional Council is currently preparing a Regional Council Plan (RCP) for areas within the "coastal marine area"¹⁹ of the estuary (see also Section 3.3.3). It is important that the Department continues to liaise closely with the Council to ensure that the RCP provides adequate protection for the large area of the estuary situated within the "coastal marine area".

2.5.11.1.4 Management Issues

There are a range of management issues involving Ahuriri Estuary. Some can be resolved through this CMS but others involve a number of other authorities and landowners.

i) Developments in and surrounding the Estuary

A number of developments have been proposed which, if implemented, could have a significant impact on the natural values of the estuary. They include:

- Motorway Extension - A number of routes which cross the estuary have been investigated. After consultation with many groups, including the Department, Transit New Zealand Limited has announced its preferred route, and has applied to the relevant local authorities for the required statutory consents. The route passes 50m upstream of the existing embankment bridge. The Department will continue to liaise with Transit New Zealand and will be involved in the resource consent process, to ensure that the significant natural values of the estuary are protected should this proposal proceed.
- Dredging/Reclamation - including the proposal to expand Pandora pond. As indicated in Section 2.5.11.1.2, the Department opposes this proposal.

As well, there are potential airport and industrial developments which could impact on Ahuriri.

ii) Management of Revested Dry Land Areas

As a result of recent legislation, (see Section 2.5.11.1.3) some areas have been revested in the Crown and will be held for conservation purposes and "such other purpose or purposes under the Conservation Act as may be specified in the Order". Unlike the Foreshore and Seabed Endowment Revesting Act, which is a revesting act (ie, upon enactment of the legislation the land revests) the HBDLER Act is an enabling Act which contains provisions for revesting and classification of land by way of Order in Council. Some 67 hectares near Humber Street, Taipo Stream, the Southern Marsh and Westshore, will be managed by the Department to protect their natural and historic values.

¹⁹ The "coastal marine area" extends up the estuary to 1 km above the Taipo Stream confluence, and also 500m up the Taipo Stream. (See Map 3).

iii) Liaison/Co-operation with other Authorities, Landowners and Recreational Users of the Area.

It is essential that there is continuing co-operation between all authorities involved in management and use of the estuary and its surrounds.

iv) Public Use

A number of public use issues need to be resolved, including the entry of dogs onto areas managed by the Department and proposed developments in the estuary to cater for increased public use. The proposal to expand Pandora Pond to provide additional space for recreation is of considerable concern to the Department. These, and other issues are addressed in the Conservancy Recreation Strategy.



Ahuriri Estuary is one of only two large estuaries between the Bay of Plenty and Wellington. It has a unique geological history, is an important wildlife habitat and is the only estuary making any important contribution to marine fisheries in Hawke Bay. It is widely used for education and recreation.

2.5.11.1.5 Management Objectives

- i To manage the Ahuriri Conservation Areas primarily to protect their important natural and historic values, and subject to this, to facilitate public access to and use of them.
- ii To finalise revesting under the HBDLER Act and manage the revested areas to protect natural and historic values.
- iii To advocate the protection of areas with high natural and historic values in the estuary generally, through input into statutory planning documents and continued liaison with local authorities.
- iv To continue to oppose uses or developments which would have a negative impact on the important natural and historic values of the area.
- v To facilitate appropriate public use and enjoyment of the area by:
 - * maintaining the Ahuriri walking track to an appropriate standard;
 - * maintaining interpretation facilities;
 - * exercising appropriate controls on users (regulations will be formulated to enforce any restrictions considered necessary).
 - * in conjunction with Napier City Council investigating the long-term recreational opportunities of the Ahuriri Estuary and adjacent lands.
- vi To continue planting and restoration of the area in association with other groups.
- vii To carry out further ecological surveys in and around the estuary and encourage appropriate research by other agencies.
- viii To recognise the importance of the area for tangata whenua, and consult with and involve them in management, planning and interpretation.
- ix In association with other groups and local authorities to raise public awareness and appreciation of the significance and vulnerability of the estuary and its surrounds.
- x To recognise the educational values of the area, and to work with educational groups to facilitate appropriate uses which will not threaten natural and historic values.
- xi To continue to liaise with the Hawke's Bay Regional Council to ensure that the Hawke's Bay Regional Coastal Plan provides adequate protection for the estuary.

Cape Kidnappers - Reserve Boundaries

Nesting Areas

Government Purpose Reserve

Nature Reserve

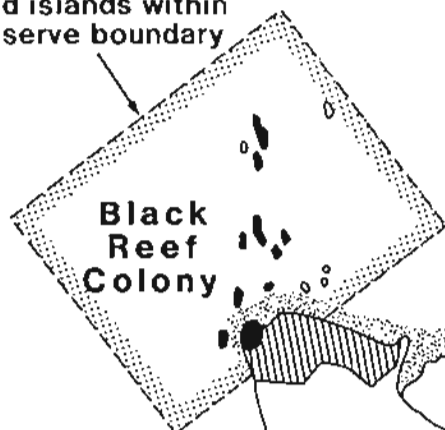
(also includes all rocks and islands within reserve boundary at Black Reef)

Foreshore

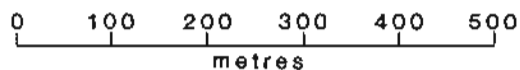
Areas with high natural values worthy of Protection



All rocks and islands within reserve boundary



Black Reef Colony



Hawke Bay

Cape Kidnappers

Saddle Colony

Plateau Colony

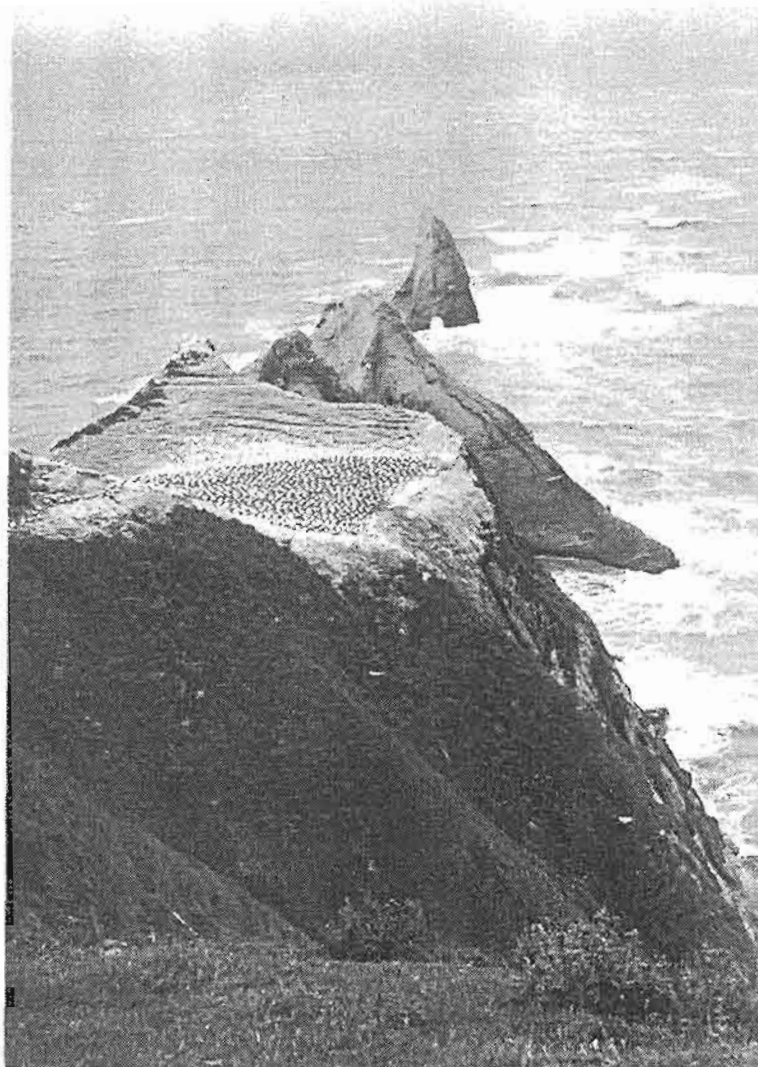
Summerlee Station

To Clifton-
Te Awanga

2.5.11.2 Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve

2.5.11.2.1 Introduction

Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve is located on a promontory forming the southern extremity of Hawke Bay. Until recently the gannet colonies at Cape Kidnappers were the only ones established on a mainland area in the world. Although there are now several other mainland colonies (eg. Farewell Spit, Muriwai), the Kidnappers colonies remain nationally significant both for their natural values and their ready accessibility.



The "saddle" colony of the Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve. There is restricted access to this area, but the "plateau" and "black reef" colonies, which are also within the reserve, are visited by many thousands of visitors each year. Until recently these colonies were the only known mainland gannet colonies in the world. They remain the largest and most accessible mainland colonies in New Zealand.

2.5.11.2.2 Management

The reserve was formerly managed by the Department of Lands and Survey (until 1987) with policy advice from the Cape Kidnappers Bird Sanctuary Board (until 1984). Most of the plateau colony is on private land (Summerlee Station), as is the mainland part of the Black Reef colony. The area has a management plan, but it is somewhat dated and its provisions do not adequately cover all current management issues.

2.5.11.2.3 Lands Managed by the Department

The only areas managed by the Department are at the two reserve areas (at the Cape and at the end of Black Reef) which total 12.9094 hectares. The area has a dual classification, with the gannet colonies classified Nature Reserve, and the public facilities areas classified Government Purpose Reserve (see Map Four).

2.5.11.2.4 Management Issues

There are a range of management issues needing resolution through this CMS.

(i) Public access.

At present there is unrestricted public access to the Black Reef gannet colony, seasonal access to the plateau colony (to avoid initial nesting times) and access by permit only to the saddle colony. This arrangement has been satisfactory, although the need for the seasonal restriction on access to the plateau colony has been questioned. Visitor pressure on the area is highly likely to increase in the future and monitoring of use and access provisions is essential.

(ii) Reserve boundaries

Parts of the colonies are outside the reserve boundary. The previous administration (Department of Lands and Survey) had commenced negotiations with Summerlee Station over protection and management options for those areas. Also, the foreshore (area between MHWS and MLWS) is legally outside the reserve, but is one of the main areas used by visitors, vehicles etc. It is possible that it could/should be added to the reserve.

(iii) Revegetation

This area, as with the wider coastal environment, is largely denuded of its former coastal forests. As one area of publicly owned land accessible to Napier/Hastings, there is considerable public interest in revegetation of some parts. This would not include the gannet colonies.

(iv) Rubbish

Until recently there has been rubbish receptacles at the public shelter/toilet area. Consistent with national policy these have been removed and visitors are expected to remove their rubbish.

(v) Camping

Historically, public camping has been prohibited. This has been due to the lack of flat reserve land, lack of water, and concerns over rubbish and toilet use.

(vi) Dunes

The dunes are outside the reserve. Despite that, they link the two areas of reserve, and attract some visitation from reserve users. They are easily erodible, and vehicle use exacerbates erosion. They are also wahi tapu and need special cultural consideration.

2.5.11.2.5 Management Objectives

- i To manage the Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve for the purposes of the protection of gannets and their nesting area.
- ii Where consistent with the above, to facilitate public access and enjoyment of the reserve.
- iii To investigate, and implement where appropriate, protection and management options for the areas of gannet colony outside the existing reserve, for the foreshore area adjacent to the reserve and for the sand dune area, in consultation with the owners of Summerlee Station.
- iv To facilitate revegetation of parts of the Government Purpose Reserve, in appropriate coastal species, by volunteer effort.
- v To prohibit camping and encourage and enforce a rubbish removal policy.
- vi To prohibit vehicles (including trailbikes and bicycles) within the existing reserve and advocate the prohibition of vehicles on sand-dune areas and other sensitive areas outside the reserve.
- vii To prohibit the taking of dogs into the Government Purpose Reserve²⁰. (Bylaws will be sought to enforce this).
- viii To prepare a new Conservation Management Plan (CMP) for the Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve and the Government Purpose Reserve.

²⁰ *At present, dogs are prohibited within the Nature Reserve, but these restrictions do not apply outside it. This prohibition does not apply to seeing-eye dogs, police dogs, dogs used for specified management purposes, or if specific permission has been granted by the Department for the taking of dogs into the Reserve.*



*Gannets gather at Cape Kidnappers from about September through April.
During the remaining months the colony is deserted
(except for occasional roosting birds) while the gannets range across the
Tasman Sea to Australia.*

Section 2.6 MARINE

*"Ka titiro au
Ki te moana
Ki nga mahinga mataitai
A te whanau"*

2.6.1 Vision

The vulnerability and importance of our marine environment is widely appreciated by the people of the region.

The natural character and water quality of marine habitats is preserved, and where development or use is permitted it is without adverse effects.

Activities on land are managed recognising their down-stream effect on the marine environment.

2.6.2 Introduction

Although this group is separate from Section 2.5, in that it covers the area below MHWS, integrated management of the two areas is essential to protect the integrity of both. Provisions relating to the Department's role in the management of these areas are included in the Resource Management Act 1991, the Conservation Act 1987, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the Wildlife Act 1953.

As yet there are no marine reserves in the Conservancy, although the Wairoa Hard²¹ and inshore area between Ocean Beach and Karamea Island (including the waters around Motu o Kura) are partially protected under fisheries legislation (see Section 3.2.4).

The Department is currently proceeding with a proposal to establish a marine reserve between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches. The Director-General of Conservation has formally applied for a marine reserve in this area.

2.6.3 Physical Description

2.6.3.1 Bathymetry and Geology

Coastal topography is discussed in Section 2.5.3. Hawke Bay is approximately 80 km across at its entrance and extends approximately 44 km inwards from the general line of the coast. Its maximum width is approximately 94 km. Off Hawke Bay the general line of the shelf margin curves outward and consequently the shelf is much

²¹ *A very large area of seabed within Hawke Bay which is made up of gravels from the Mohaka and Wairoa Rivers. It supports different benthic communities from the rest of Hawke Bay.*

wider here than in adjacent areas to the north and south. Over most of the bay the seafloor is virtually smooth, with isobaths following the general shape of the coast. The majority of the floor of Hawke Bay is covered by muds, but in areas shallower than 40 m medium to fine sands form the principal substrate-type.

Significant seabed features in Hawke Bay include Pania, Town, Te Awanga and Black Reefs.

South of Cape Kidnappers, broad intertidal platforms and associated subtidal reef systems composed of sandstones and siltstones are features of the inshore environment. Major offshore reef systems include Mercia Rock (2.5 km south of Cape Kidnappers), Motu o Kura (Bare Island), a large area of deep reef between Paoanui Point and Aramoana, and another situated off the Tautane Stream (Cape Turnagain). South of Cape Kidnappers medium-fine sand grades into mud in areas shallower than 40 m.

2.6.3.2 Hydrology

The main oceanic currents influencing Hawke Bay are the Southland and East Cape Currents. The Southland Current is generally considered to flow north over the continental shelf, while the East Cape Current flows south. The relative influence of each of these currents varies seasonally. During winter strong southerly winds are associated with a northward extension of the Southland Current, possibly as far north as Gisborne. The seasonal appearance of warm water pelagic species over summer is assumed to be associated with the presence of warm East Cape Current water.

2.6.3.3 Flora and Fauna

The interplay of the East Cape and Southland currents has a major influence on the distribution of marine species found in Hawke's Bay. Many typically "northern" and "southern" species reach their distributional limits somewhere along this section of the coast.

Investigations of nearshore communities within Hawke Bay have revealed a rich and diverse inshore benthic fauna, with 162 species recorded. The reef systems are characterised by high densities of green-lipped mussels and low densities of large brown algae.

Little is known of what inhabits soft sediments south of Cape Kidnappers. Reef systems shallower than 20 m in this part of the Conservancy are dominated by large brown algae (*Carpophyllum* spp, *Ecklonia radiata*) and the green-lipped mussel is all but absent.

Characteristic reef fish are dwarf scorpionfish, spotty, banded wrasse, marblefish (maori chief), red moki, blue cod, butterflyfish, and a number of small triplefins.

2.6.4 Natural and Historic Values

The natural and historic values of the marine area are incompletely known but include:

- * The use of the Wairoa Hard and other shallow inshore waters of Hawke Bay (including the Ahuriri Estuary) as spawning and nursery habitat by a large number of fish species;
- * Pania and Black Reefs which are significant as the largest reef habitats in Hawke Bay;
- * The intertidal platforms between Kairakau and Blackhead Point which are significant as feeding habitat for resident and migratory coastal bird species;
- * Traditional maori food gathering areas, and areas of cultural significance to the tangata whenua;
- * Historic shipwrecks.

(For further resource information on areas identified as having important natural or historic values, in the general coastal environment, refer to Appendix 4).

2.6.5 Issues and Threats

The Resource Management Act 1991 refers to the preservation of the natural character of the coast, including the "coastal marine area" (CMA) as a matter of national importance.

Coastal water quality in Hawke Bay is currently, or potentially affected by:

- * coastal outfalls;
- * stormwater and industrial discharges;
- * run-off from urban and agricultural areas;
- * terrestrial erosion;
- * toxic substances contained in antifouling paints;
- * discharges of ballast water and sediments;
- * oil and chemical spills;
- * leachate from landfills
- * septic tank effluent.

Intertidal and subtidal organisms and habitats, particularly estuarine ones, are potentially threatened by reclamations, dredging and the dumping of spoil.

Trawling and shellfish dredging modify the marine environment in similar ways to dredging; through scraping and ploughing of the substrate, sediment resuspension, physical removal of seabed organisms and dumping of processing wastes.

2.6.6 Public Use

In addition to numerous recreational activities, including swimming, fishing and shellfish gathering, the Hawke's Bay marine environment supports an important commercial inshore fishery. In some areas commercial fishing may be the main use.

2.6.7 Important Unprotected Areas

As noted in the introduction to this section most of the marine environment receives no formal protection, and there are presently no completely protected marine areas within Hawke Bay. Appendix 4 identifies fourteen areas with important natural and historic values within the coastal environment of Hawke's Bay Conservancy several of which are all or partly situated below MHWS. These areas require protection from activities which could threaten those values. The areas within the CMA have been recognised in the Hawke's Bay Regional Council's draft Regional Coastal Plan, which currently provides substantial provisions for their ongoing protection.



The intertidal area of the proposed marine reserve between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches on the central Hawke's Bay coast is composed of large reefs rich in marine life, which are easily accessible to visitors.

2.6.8 Management Objectives

- i To promote inclusion of policies and rules in regional policy statements, regional coastal plans and district plans that will protect the natural character of, and minimise the adverse effects of development and use on marine areas.
- ii To advocate the protection of areas with important natural and historic values identified in Appendix 4 to this document, and any other further areas identified in the future.
- iii To establish a marine reserve between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches, and manage it to protect and enhance the values for which it is established.
- iv To identify and investigate other sites that may be suitable for marine reserves.
- v To advocate, through statutory processes and continued liaison with local authorities and landowners, the integrated management of land and sea ecosystems. (see also Section 3.3.3).
- vi To advocate the use of environmentally sensitive fishing methods in areas vulnerable to damage by fishing gear.
- vii To seek to raise public awareness and appreciation of the marine environment.

2.6.9 Specific Places Requiring More Detailed Discussion

As indicated in Section 2.6.1 and discussed in more detail in Section 3.2.4, the Conservancy is currently proceeding with an proposal to establish a marine reserve between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches. The Director-General of Conservation has formally applied for a marine reserve in this area.

Management objectives and implementation provisions for this proposed reserve and any future reserves are detailed in Section 3.2.4.

SECTION 3 - FUNCTIONAL OBJECTIVES AND IMPLEMENTATION PROVISIONS

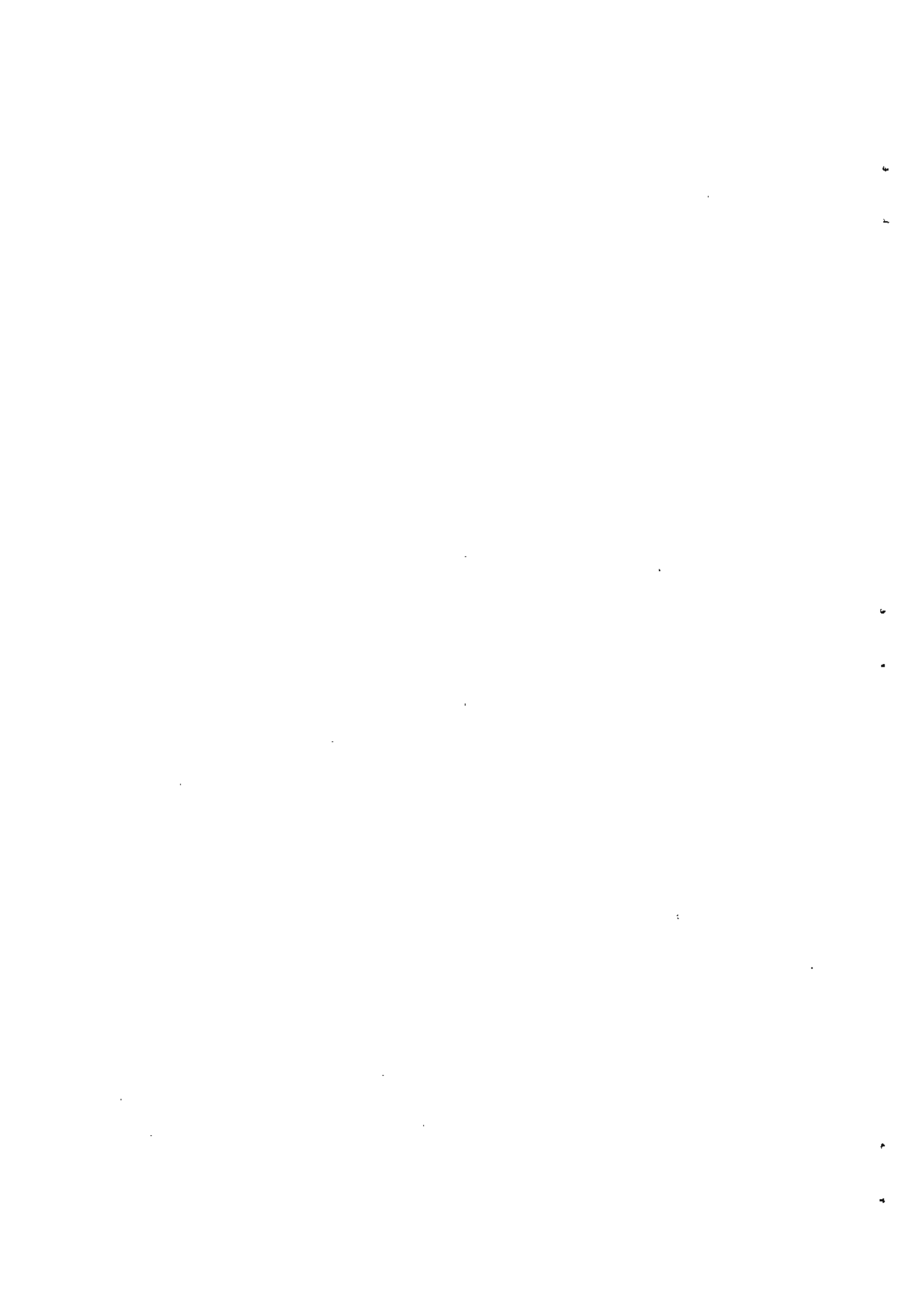
This section contains objectives and implementation provisions for all the functions of the Department, across all of the places in the Conservancy discussed in the previous section (Section Two). It should not be read in isolation from Section Two.

<u>Table of Contents</u>	<u>Page</u>
3.1 Resolution of Treaty of Waitangi Issues	82
3.2 Unprotected Areas	84
3.2.1 Introduction	84
3.2.2 Protected Natural Areas (PNA) Programme	84
3.2.3 Historic Resources	88
3.2.4 Marine Protected Areas	90
3.3 Statutory Advocacy and Coastal Responsibilities	92
3.3.1 Introduction	92
3.3.2 Statutory Advocacy	93
3.3.3 Coastal Responsibilities	94
3.3.3.1 Coastal Advocacy	95
3.3.3.2 Marine Fisheries Advocacy	96
3.3.3.3 Coastal Resources Inventory (CRI)	97
3.4 Protection of Lands Managed by the Department	99
3.4.1 Introduction	99
3.4.2 Management of Historic Resources	100
3.4.3 Fire Prevention and Control	103
3.4.4 Animal Pest Control	105
3.4.5 Plant Pest Control	109
3.4.6 Restoration	114
3.4.7 Survey/Monitoring/Research	116
3.4.8 Wildlife Sanctuaries, Wildlife Refuges and Wildlife Management Reserves . .	118
3.5 Protected Species	120
3.5.1 Introduction	120
3.5.2 Protected Animals (Birds)	120
3.5.3 Protected Animals (Other Species)	123
3.5.4 Threatened Plants	126
3.5.4.1 Identification of Threatened species	126
3.5.4.2 Priorities for Management/Protection	127
3.5.5 Marine Mammal Protection	130

3.5.6	Convention in Trade in Endangered Species (CITES) and Protected Species Permitting	132
3.6	Commercial and Extractive Uses of Areas Managed by the Department .	134
3.6.1	Commercial Recreation and Tourism Use of Areas Managed by the Department	134
3.6.2	Recreational (Non-Commercial) Use of Areas Managed by the Department	137
3.6.3	Non-Recreation/Tourism Leases, Licences and Statutory Consents	138
3.6.3.1	Grazing	138
3.6.3.2	Bee Keeping	140
3.6.3.3	Telecommunication Systems	140
3.6.3.4	Easements	141
3.6.3.5	Bach Sites and Private Houses	142
3.6.3.6	Prospecting, Exploration and Mining	143
3.6.3.7	Power Generation	145
3.6.3.8	Defence/Police Use of Lands Managed by the Department	146
3.6.4	Taking of Plants and Animals	147
3.7	Land Administration	150
3.8	Recreation Opportunities - Access, Facilities, Services	152
3.8.1	Introduction	152
3.8.2	Recreational Use	155
3.8.2.1	Visitor Access - General	155
3.8.2.2	Aircraft	157
3.8.2.3	Off Road Vehicles	158
3.8.2.4	Domestic Animals	159
3.8.2.5	Organised Club or Public Events	161
3.8.2.6	Environmental Care	162
3.8.2.7	Visitor Health and Safety	163
3.8.3	Facilities	165
3.9	Public Awareness	167
3.9.1	Introduction	167
3.9.2	Public Liaison	167
3.9.3	Education	168
3.9.4	Community Involvement/Volunteers	169
3.9.5	News Media	170
3.9.6	Public Information and Publications	170
3.9.7	Visitor Programmes	171
3.9.8	Interpretation (signs)	171

3.10	Liaison and Planning Matters	173
3.10.1	Management Planning	173
3.10.2	Consultation	174
3.10.2.1	Consultation with Tangata Whenua	175
3.10.3	Servicing of Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board	177
3.10.4	Liaison with Fish and Game Council	178
3.10.5	Liaison with Historic Places Trust	180
3.11	Compliance and Law Enforcement	181
3.12	Efficient Use of Resources in the Workplace	184

Section Three
(Functional Objectives and Implementation
Provisions)



Section 3.1 RESOLUTION OF TREATY ISSUES

Section 4 of the Conservation Act requires the Department of Conservation to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi²². This statutory obligation requires the Department to be responsive to Treaty issues raised by tangata whenua.

Treaty of Waitangi issues for the Department fall into three broad categories:

- i Claims resolution issues;
- ii Article 2 issues - includes aspects of traditional harvest, traditional access and wahi tapu;
- iii Legislative issues - claims and findings and their implications for decisions under the Conservation Act and other Acts.

Departmental policies and procedures relating to these issues were developed in the June 1991 Draft Kaupapa Atawhai Plan and approved, as a draft, by the Minister.

Also relevant to the resolution of Treaty issues are the several agreements resulting from the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) held in Rio de Janeiro in 1992, in particular, Agenda 21, which contains principles for strengthening the role of indigenous peoples in resource management (see Bibliography - number 21).

OBJECTIVES

- i To assist with settlement of claims under the Treaty of Waitangi, as required by Government, as directed by Head Office, and in liaison with tangata whenua and Crown agencies²³.
- ii To develop an effective partnership²⁴ between the Department and tangata whenua in protection and management of natural and historic resources administered by the Department.

²² See Appendix 1.

²³ The Department's predominant role in resolution of Treaty issues is to ensure the ongoing protection of New Zealand's natural and historic resources.

²⁴ "Partnership" is a shorthand way of describing the elements which the Treaty envisaged would reflect the relationship between the Crown and Maori. The New Zealand Court of Appeal has determined that these elements include notions of reasonableness, awareness of the other partner's views, willingness to accommodate those views, fairness and good faith. In short, effective co-operation.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Treaty perspectives will be incorporated throughout the Department's work, and staff performance in this area will be evaluated.
- ii Hawke's Bay Conservancy staff will work with tangata whenua and other Crown agencies, to assist in the process of resolving any claims in the Conservancy through the Waitangi Tribunal mediation process. (see Section 3.1.1)
- iii Ongoing training will be given to staff on Treaty principles and responsibilities.
- iv The Department will fully inform Maori and seek their participation in departmental activities.
- v The Department will involve Maori in protection and interpretation of sites of significance to Maori people on lands managed by the Department.

3.1.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

Fifteen Treaty of Waitangi claims which may impact on lands managed by the Department have been lodged within the Conservancy. They are as follows:

- * Te Whanganui a Orotu (includes Ahuriri Estuary)(Wai 55)
- * Rangaiika (coast, just south of Cape Kidnappers)(Wai 69)
- * Mohaka River margins (Wai 119)
- * Mangateretere (Wai 71)
- * Pongaroa Station (Wai 101)
- * Puketapu (Wai 127)
- * Rangitane (Wai 166)
- * Waiohiki Lands (Wai 168)
- * Waipukurau (Wai 161)
- * Ruataniwha Tautane (Wai 171)
- * Wairoa Ki Wairarapa (Wai 201)
- * Te Matai (Pakaututu) (Wai 216)
- * Kaweka Forest Park (Wai 382)
- * Gwavas/Wakarara (Wai 397)
- * Tarawera Block (Wai 191)

New claims may emerge in the future.

Section 3.2 UNPROTECTED AREAS

3.2.1 Introduction

As well as managing lands under its control, the Department is empowered (under Section 6 of the Conservation Act) to advocate and promote the conservation of natural and historic resources generally and to protect freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats. It also has responsibility under various other Acts (eg, Wildlife Act 1953) to protect natural values elsewhere.

In this Section (3.2) the Conservancy's objectives for advocating protection of currently unprotected important natural and historic values are outlined.

As the Conservancy's protected areas (particularly in the lowlands and coastal areas) are inadequate, both in the amount of land protected and also its representativeness, this aspect of the Department's work in Hawke's Bay is a high priority.

Protection of natural or historic values in areas not managed by the Department does not necessarily require the acquisition of land. It may be achieved by leases or covenants, or simply by increased public awareness and understanding of conservation issues. Community involvement in conservation and in land protection is also essential.

Integrated land management throughout the Conservancy is also a key to protection of natural resources in general. This requires close liaison between the Department, local authorities and landowners, and is covered in Section 3.3 and generally throughout Section 2 of this CMS.

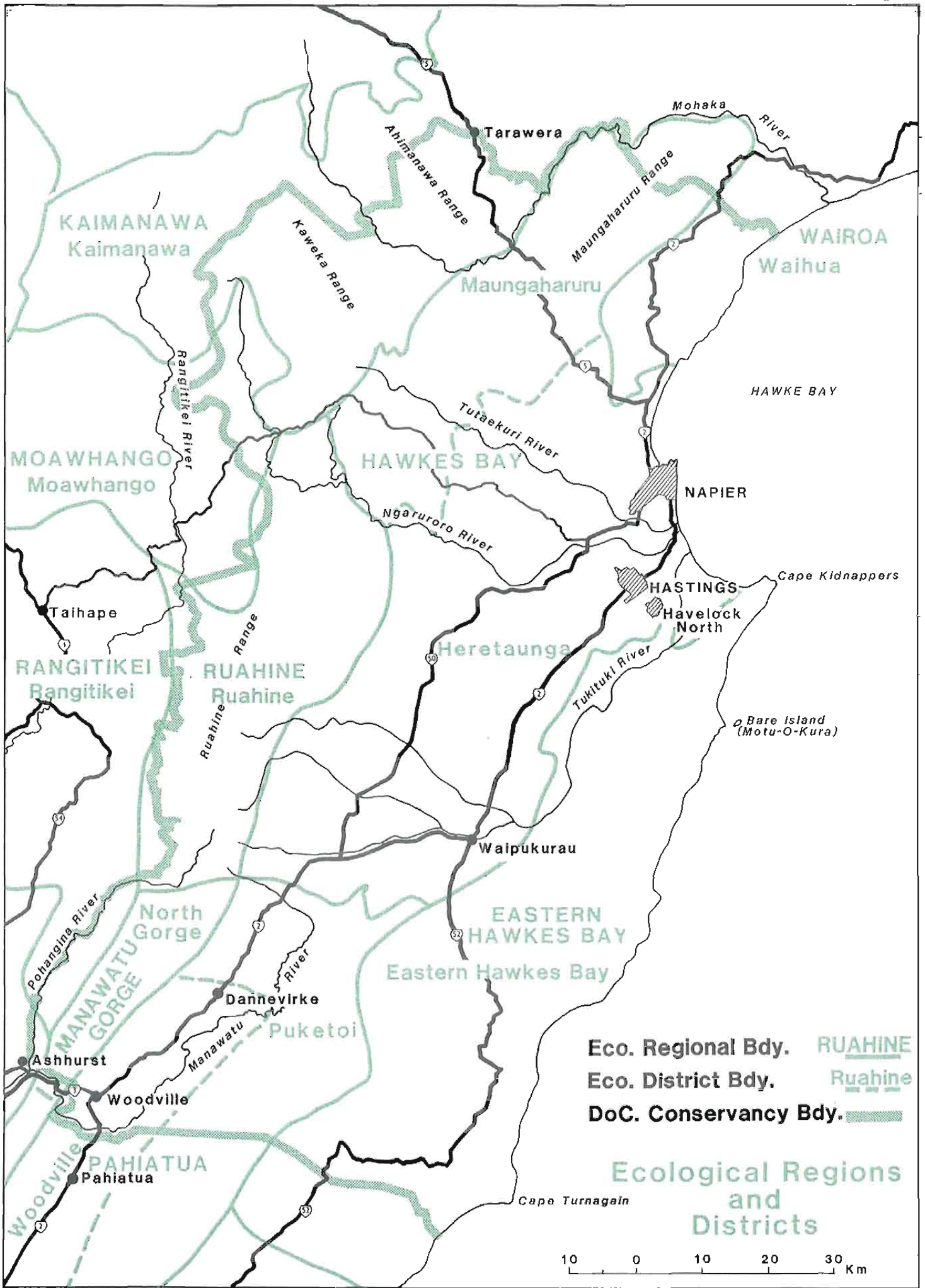
3.2.2 Protected Natural Areas Programme (PNAP)

The Protected Natural Areas Programme (PNAP) lies at the very heart of efforts to protect biodiversity²⁵ in New Zealand. It is a nationwide programme aimed at identifying and protecting the remaining representative and distinctive natural/ecological features in the landscape, regardless of tenure. It is based around the system of ecological districts and regions of New Zealand, and has several stages in its progression. Each ecological district is regarded as being unique, in its particular combination of geology, landforms, climate, vegetation, wildlife, history and land use. This means that if something is special within an ecological district, it is by definition special nationally.

For each ecological district, the PNAP has the following sequence:

- Reconnaissance survey (largely information gathering);
- Field survey to locate and describe what is there (usually with a focus on native vegetation, wetlands and landform features);
- Selection of the best areas which, if not already protected, are listed as Recommended Areas for Protection (RAP's). The natural criteria used to determine RAP's are included in Appendix 13;

²⁵ See Appendix 16 and Glossary.



- Protection of RAP's and other valuable areas as opportunities arise (physical and legal protection).

The Department of Conservation is primarily responsible for all aspects of the PNAP, but works with other agencies and individuals where appropriate, particularly in survey and protection.



The lowland and coastal areas of Hawke's Bay have the smallest total area of protected features. Forest remnants remaining on farmland, as above, are all important for maintaining biodiversity and as wildlife corridors or "stepping stones" between other protected areas.

Biological Diversity

New Zealand became the 29th nation to ratify the Convention on Biological Diversity, in September 1993. "Biological diversity" (or "biodiversity") is described in the Glossary and the key points of the Convention on Biological Diversity are included as Appendix 16.

Ratification of this convention will influence the way the Department, and other agencies involved in environmental/resource management operate in the future.

(continues)

The underlying principle of biodiversity conservation is that the conservation of what is indigenous to a local area makes a fundamental contribution to the wider region, the nation and the planet. It emphasises the inter-connectedness of all systems in nature and also the custodianship role of people. It does not preclude human use of natural resources, so long as that use is sustainable.

The principle of protecting biodiversity underpins all aspects of this CMS. What it means for Hawke's Bay Conservancy, is that protection of remaining representative and special natural features is of prime importance, particularly in the highly modified lowland and coastal areas. The protection and restoration of the links and systems that maintain them is equally important.

Each person can make a contribution to the maintenance of biodiversity by simple means such as planting trees in private gardens which will help sustain native birds during winter months. Ultimately, however, it will need a commitment to viewing the natural environment holistically and ensuring that our use of natural resources is sustainable.

3.2.2.1 Identification of Important Natural Areas

The Conservancy spans ten ecological districts (see Map Five). So far, the reconnaissance stage of the PNAP has been done for each. This has confirmed the view that, while the loss of indigenous biodiversity has been extensive over much of the Conservancy, this has been most pronounced in the lowland and coastal areas. Therefore priority for the programme lies in the lowlands on the eastern side of the Ruahine and Kaweka Ranges, and in the Maungaharuru Range. In these areas the original vegetation cover (mainly forests) has been reduced to small remnants, few of which have protection, and most of the original wetlands are gone or have been drastically modified. Accordingly, subsequent stages of the PNAP are concentrating on these areas. This coincides with a rapidly growing awareness of the importance of the remaining natural features there, among landowners and the public.

OBJECTIVE

To identify important natural areas not yet protected in the Conservancy.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i All ecological districts will eventually have full PNAP surveys completed in them. Priority will be given to the lowland areas east of the main ranges (Waihua Ecological District) and Maungaharuru Ecological District. (see Sections 2.3 and 2.4).

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

Surveys of the Pahiatua, Woodville, Heretaunga, and Eastern Hawke's Bay Ecological Districts have been published. The Maungaharuru Ecological District survey will be published in the 1994/95 financial year. Completion of the remaining surveys are dependent on available resources and on the priority given to the project in neighbouring conservancies with shared responsibilities for their preparation.

- ii Field surveys will be done in each of these districts to locate and describe remaining unprotected natural features, with a focus on native vegetation, distinctive landforms, rare plants/animals and their habitats and centres of archaeological and cultural importance.
- iii The best (most intact, representative and special) areas will be described in detail and listed as Recommended Areas for Protection (RAP).
- iv Landowners and tangata whenua will be consulted and kept informed during all stages of survey and identification of RAP's.

3.2.2.2 Implementation of Legal Protection

Once important natural areas that are as yet unprotected are identified, the next step in the PNAP is protection of them, both physically and legally.

OBJECTIVE

To seek physical and legal protection for as many RAP's in the Conservancy as required to attain a network of protected areas which contains a wide representation of both common and distinctive natural features.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Owners of RAP's will be approached to explore the prospects of protection of their land. If they are interested in such protection, high priority will be given to achieve this.
- ii If other worthwhile areas become available or are offered for protection, those too will be pursued, as resources allow.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iii Legal protection may be offered in a number of forms, including conservation covenants (with either the Department or the QEII National Trust), Nga Whenua Rahui Kawenata,²⁶ giftings or acquisition, and the appropriate option followed for each case.
- iv The costs of protection (fencing, survey, pest control etc) will be sought from the most appropriate source. In most cases initial physical protection and on-going management will be done by the Department.

3.2.2.3 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

Stage One of the PNAP for all Ecological Districts in the Conservancy is complete. Results indicate that the lowland areas, in particular the Heretaunga and Eastern Hawke's Bay Ecological Districts, have the smallest total areas of protected natural features (although all districts are under-represented in terms of protected natural areas). Important unprotected areas in the two above ecological districts will be given priority for protection in the future, along with areas on the crest and flanks of the Maungaharuru Range, and important riparian margins throughout the Conservancy. (see Sections 2.3 and 2.4). A full list of RAP's in each of the surveyed ecological districts can be found in the relevant reports listed in the Bibliography to this document.

3.2.3 Historic Resources²⁷

Pre-European settlement is a major feature of the Hawke's Bay Conservancy due to accessibility to vast resources. Large stretches of sandy coastline, such as at Ocean Beach Porangahau, and Te Whanganui a Orotu (Ahuriri) were desirable places to settle. Little archaeological research has been undertaken in the Hawke's Bay Conservancy. Our knowledge of the area comes from sites recorded in the NZ Archaeological Association Site Record File, collections of artefacts held in the Napier Museum and from traditional history.

More recent activities in the region have produced historic places associated with exploration, farming, mining, hunting, natural history, recreation, tourism and communications.

In association with the tangata whenua and the Historic Places Trust, the Department of Conservation has a role in advocating the protection of these resources. This requires a greater knowledge of the resource itself and will require specific archaeological surveys. Continuing land development in Hawke's Bay places many sites under imminent threat.

The term "historic resources" includes, archaeological sites, historic places and wahi tapu, as defined in the Historic Places Act, 1993 (see Glossary).

²⁶ See Glossary.

²⁷ This section (3.2.3) covers the Departments's responsibilities for conservation of historic resources on lands not managed by it. Its responsibilities for historic resources on lands it manages is covered in Section 3.4.2.

Under the Conservation Act, the Department of Conservation, may assist the Historic Places Trust in advocating the conservation of historic resources which are not in areas managed by the Department. This may be pursued through the statutory planning process, by negotiations with landowners and developers, as well as through educational, advisory and promotional activities. It is however recognised that under the new Historic Places Act there is an implication that the prime advocate for historic resources, especially not on lands managed by the Department, will be the Historic Places Trust.

Although the nature of the Department's relationship with the branch committees of the Historic Places Trust is not clearly defined in legislation at present, it is important that the two bodies work closely together in historic resource management. The Hawke's Bay Conservancy assists the local branch Committee by providing a meeting venue and photocopying.

OBJECTIVES

- i In conjunction with the local branch committees of the Historic Places Trust, to participate in the identification of important historic places not yet protected in the Conservancy and to seek legal protection for as many as possible.**
- ii In conjunction with the local branch committees of the Historic Places Trust, to raise public awareness of our historic heritage and encourage support for the conservation of this heritage.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will support tangata whenua to achieve the protection of sites of cultural significance.**
- ii The Department may undertake, or co-ordinate and co-operate in, further surveys of specific historic places of special significance that are not located on lands managed by the Department (eg, parts of Te Whanganui a Orotu and other coastal areas) in liaison with tangata whenua and the NZ Historic Places Trust.**
- iii The Department may facilitate the identification of categories of historic places of special significance which are not located on areas managed by the Department or otherwise protected, and may initiate their protection by acquisition, covenanting, or other means.**
- iv An effective working relationship will be developed and maintained with local authorities to ensure that historic resources are identified in policies and plans prepared by them and are fully considered in all statutory processes. (see Section 3.3.2).**

3.2.3.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

As indicated in Sections 2.4 and 2.5, recorded archaeological sites are concentrated in the lowlands, particularly on the coastal margins. It is in these areas that the Department's role in advocating for conservation of historic resources is likely to be focused.

3.2.4 Marine Reserves (See also Section 2.6)

The Marine Reserves Act 1971 provides for "the setting up and management of areas of the sea and foreshore as marine reserves for the purpose of preserving them in their natural state as the habitat of marine life for scientific study".

The Department is developing a long-term strategy for marine reserves. It's intention is to administer the Act to establish and manage a network of marine reserves around New Zealand's coastline to ensure, as far as possible, the preservation of representative examples of all types of natural marine ecosystems, both unique and typical.

There are currently no marine reserves within the Conservancy, although several marine areas receive partial protection under Fisheries legislation (eg, Wairoa Hard, Waimarama Fishing Reserve).

The Department has been pursuing marine reserve investigations in Hawke's Bay since July 1988. A public questionnaire circulated in 1988 identified seven general areas warranting investigation as potential marine reserves:

- (i) Waipatiki/Aropaoanui
- (ii) Pania Reef
- (iii) Cape Kidnappers
- (iv) Waimarama
- (v) Karamea
- (vi) Kairakau
- (vii) Pourerere

After extensive consultation and survey, an area of intertidal platforms and associated subtidal reef systems between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches has been proposed for a marine reserve. The Director-General of Conservation has formally applied for a marine reserve in this area.

OBJECTIVES

- i To establish a marine reserve between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches and manage it to protect and enhance the values for which it is established.**
- ii To identify and investigate other sites which may be suitable for marine reserves.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Director-General of Conservation has formally applied for a marine reserve between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches. If this application is successful an advisory committee will be established to provide a community (particularly iwi) perspective into management of the marine reserve.
- ii The status of populations of selected species within the reserve relative to those outside it will be regularly monitored, in order to ensure effective management and provide information on the effects of protection on the ecology of the area.
- iii Scientific study compatible with the purposes for which the reserve was established will be actively encouraged.
- iv Boundaries of marine reserves will be selected primarily on the basis that they reflect obvious ecological boundaries, and/or satisfy the habitat requirements of the species to be protected.
- v Sites for future marine reserves will be selected on the basis that they:
 - (i) Satisfy the requirements of the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and comply with any draft or approved departmental strategy for marine reserves;
 - (ii) Maximise the potential benefits that may arise from protection, while minimising the negative impacts of the proposal.
- vi Priority will be given to protecting sites that contain natural features or species that are vulnerable to damage or disturbance, or contain species or habitats for species, that are of regional or national significance.
- vii Where the Marine Reserves Act 1971 does not provide the most appropriate level of protection for an area, other forms of protection will be investigated.
- viii The Department will undertake extensive consultation with groups affected by, or with an interest in any proposal, as part of any marine reserve investigation (see also Section 3.10.2).

Section 3.3 STATUTORY ADVOCACY AND COASTAL RESPONSIBILITIES

3.3.1 Introduction

In many areas where the Department seeks to protect natural or historic values, the land is not managed by it. This is particularly so in the lowland and coastal areas of the Conservancy where the majority of people reside and where there are relatively few protected areas. One of the most important mechanisms for achieving protection on such land is through the statutory planning processes of local authorities. It is important that the Department, at a Conservancy level maintains a close working relationship with local authorities.

The statutory authority for involvement by the Department in conservation of natural and historic resources on land not managed by it is the Conservation Act 1987, the Wildlife Act 1953 and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. The main mechanism for this is through advocacy under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RM Act).

Section 6 of the Conservation Act 1987 sets out the functions of the Department of Conservation. Sections 6(b) and (c) enable the Department to:

"advocate the conservation of natural and historic resources generally"; and,

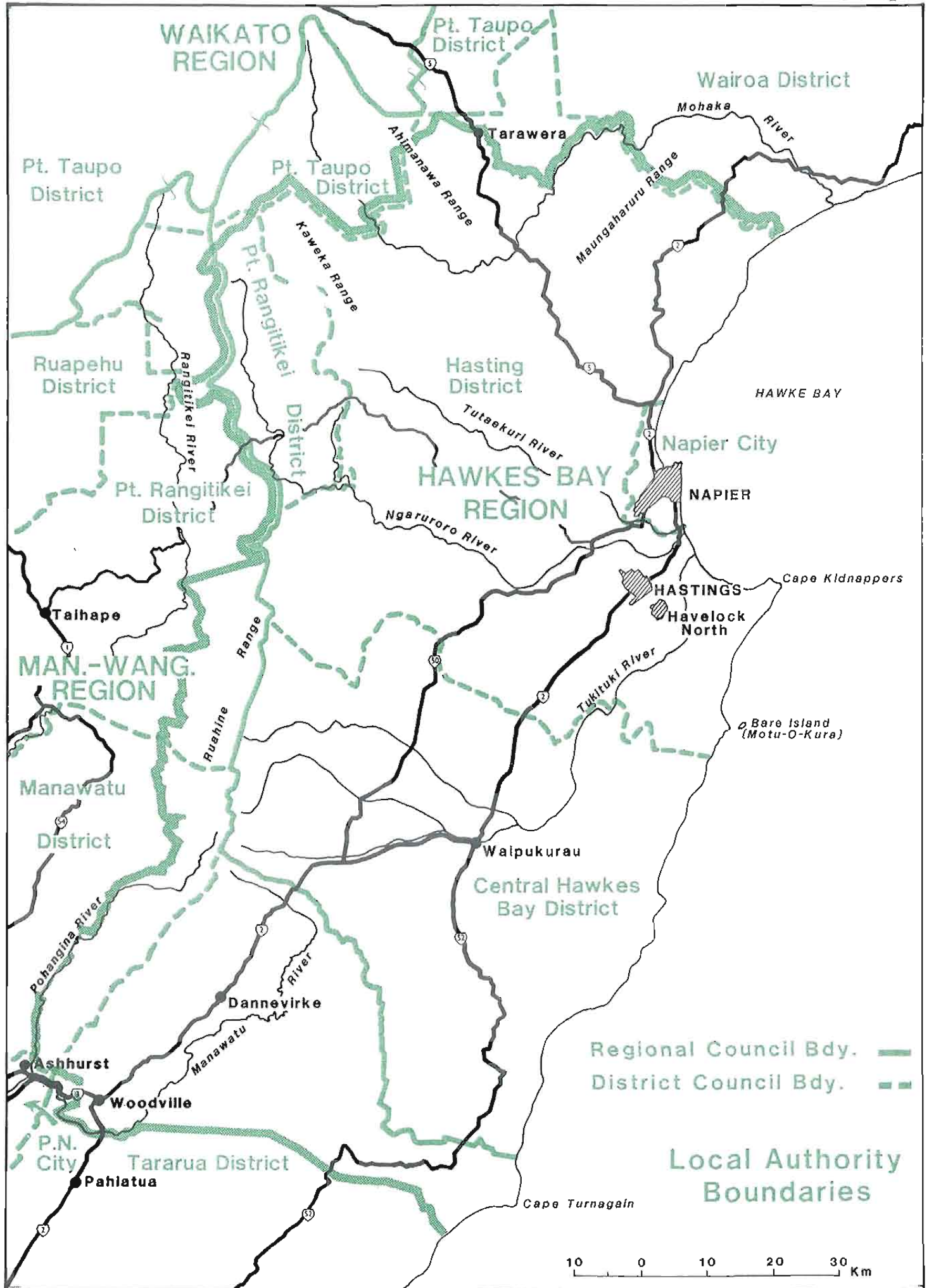
"promote the benefits to present and future generations of the conservation of natural and historic resources generally and the natural and historic resources of New Zealand in particular;"

The RM Act sets out the planning and resource consent procedures for local government. The cornerstone of the Act is the concept of sustainable management, the purposes and principles of which are not inconsistent with those of the Conservation Act (see Appendix 5).

The RM Act requires a New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement to be prepared, and allows for national environmental standards and regional policy statements that bind local authorities. Regional coastal plans, regional policy statements, and ~~district plans must be prepared by local authorities.~~ Other plans and policy statements may cover a range of issues, such as waste or freshwater management. The Department must be consulted in preparing plans under the RM Act where these affect the Department.

When preparing or changing regional policy statements (RPS's) and regional and district plans one of the matters a regional council or territorial authority must have regard to is any relevant Conservation Management Strategy.

Under the RM Act, the Minister has specific functions in relation to coastal and marine areas, and more general powers and responsibilities which apply to any agency which comes within the definition of "person": under the Act. The Minister's specific functions in relation to coastal areas are explained in detail in Section 3.3.3. (The direct responsibilities for managing protected wildlife and marine areas, through the Wildlife, Marine Mammals Protection and Marine Reserves Acts are discussed in Sections 3.2.4 and 3.5).



WAIKATO REGION

Wairoa District

Pt. Taupo District

Pt. Taupo District

Pt. Taupo District

Ahimanawa Range

Tarawera

Mohaka River

Maungaharuru Range

Kaweka Range

Ruapehu District

Hasting District

HAWKE BAY

Pt. Rangitikei District

HAWKES BAY REGION

Tutaekuri River

Napier City

NAPIER

Ngaruroro River

Pt. Rangitikei District

HASTINGS

Cape Kidnappers

Taihape

MAN.-WANG. REGION

Havelock North

Bare Island (Motu-O-Kura)

Rangitikei River

Rangitikei River

Ruahine Range

Tukituki River

Manawatu District

Central Hawkes Bay District

Waipukurau

Pohangina River

Dannevirke

Manawatu River

Regional Council Bdy. ———
District Council Bdy. - - -

Local Authority Boundaries

Cape Turnagain

10 0 10 20 30 Km

Ashurst

Woodville

P.N. City

Pahiatua

Tararua District

Approximately 80% of the Conservancy lies within the Hawke's Bay Regional Council boundaries, the remainder within the Manawatu/Wanganui Regional Council boundaries. Six District Council areas lie within the Conservancy (See Map Six). Both Regional Councils will prepare RPS's during 1993. The Department, at a Conservancy level, has been liaising closely with both regional councils during preparation of these documents.

The Napier/Hastings urban area constitutes the fourth largest metropolitan population in New Zealand. Therefore there are considerable pressures on the environment in some areas of the Conservancy. Large areas of the Conservancy are heavily modified, with the few remaining natural areas a high priority for protection. As a result, the Department's conservation advocacy function for the protection of natural and historic resources on lands not managed it is particularly important and should complement that of other environmental organizations and local authorities (see Section 4).

3.3.2 Statutory Advocacy

OBJECTIVES

- i To ensure that local authorities, both as they develop policies and plans, as well as during resource consent procedures, have regard for natural and other values, as provided under the Department's Acts.**
- ii To seek, through statutory processes and by liaison with local authorities, iwi and other groups, to ensure that all areas of high natural or historic value in the Conservancy are protected.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Close liaison will be maintained with local authorities in preparation of their policies and plans, on conservation issues generally and in consent applications under the Resource Management Act, to ensure that natural and historic values are fully considered.**
- ii Liaison with allied groups on planning issues will be used to achieve greatest conservation gain or avoid duplication of effort.**
- iii All notified resource consent applications in the Conservancy will be assessed for effects on natural or historic values. Guidelines will be developed, in association with local authorities, to ensure that appropriate proposed non-notified resource consent applications are sent to the Department for its consideration.**
- iv Pre-hearing meetings will be sought wherever possible to resolve possible conflicts and to share information, both before and after placing a submission.**

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- v Appropriate provisions will be sought in district plans for the protection of heritage areas on private lands, and the establishment of buffers to areas managed by the Department, where necessary or desirable.
- vi The Department will proactively seek to maintain, and where necessary improve, water quality in the Conservancy, through advocacy, close liaison with local authorities and landowners, and careful monitoring of applications for resource consents which could impact on water quality.
- vii The Department will co-operate with local authorities to reduce the threat to natural values posed by noxious plants (see Section 3.4.5).

3.3.2.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The Department's statutory advocacy role is one of the most important responsibilities of the Department in Hawke's Bay, because of the modified nature of much of the area.

While this function is important in all areas, it assumes greatest importance in the lowlands, coastal and marine areas, because of the lack of protected areas and the pressures on them from human developments. Therefore, it is in these areas that the Department's advocacy work is likely to be concentrated in the foreseeable future (see Sections 2.4, 2.5, 2.6 and 4).

3.3.3 Coastal Responsibilities (See also Sections 2.5 and 2.6)

The role of the Minister of Conservation and the Department in relation to the coastal environment²⁸ is determined by the Resource Management Act 1991 (RM Act).

The RM Act requires the Minister of Conservation to prepare and to put into effect the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS). This was gazetted in May 1994 and provides both a statement of Government policy and an indication of the approach which should be taken by local authorities when planning for the sustainable management of the coastal environment.

Within the Conservancy responsibility for the management of the "coastal marine area"²⁹ is shared between the Hawke's Bay and Manawatu/Wanganui Regional Councils. They are responsible for the preparation of regional coastal plans, which are given final approval by the Minister of Conservation. These mandatory plans for the "coastal marine area" of the Conservancy must not be inconsistent with the NZCPS. District Councils have the primary responsibility for controlling the effects of land use.

²⁸ See Glossary.

²⁹ As defined in the Resource Management Act - See Glossary.

Regional councils also make decisions on resource consent applications in the "coastal marine area". In certain circumstances, however, the Minister of Conservation will be the consent authority. This occurs when the Minister of Conservation has required the activity to be a "restricted coastal activity"³⁰ on the grounds that the activity has or is likely to have significant or irreversible adverse effects on a "coastal marine area", or is likely to occur in an area having significant conservation values³¹. The Department has developed criteria for identifying areas of significant conservation value (see Appendix 6) and Hawke's Bay Conservancy has identified areas which have important natural and historic values in its coastal environment (See Appendix 4). It is likely that some of these areas will become areas of significant conservation value in the "coastal marine area" in due course. There may be further areas which are as yet unidentified.

The Department administers the Marine Reserves Act 1971 which applies exclusively within the coastal marine area. It also administers the Foreshore and Seabed Endowment Revesting Act. The provisions of the Wildlife Act 1953, and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 apply to the species covered by those Acts, irrespective of whether they are in the coastal marine area, or above MHWS. The Conservation Act 1987 and the Reserves Act 1977 can apply to the foreshore and landward of the foreshore.

The conservation advocacy role of the Conservancy in relation to the coastal environment is to be directed largely by the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement, the Conservancy's interest in matters which relate to Part II of the RM Act generally, and its other advocacy priorities.

3.3.3.1 Coastal Advocacy

OBJECTIVES

- i To advocate the maintenance of the integrity of any areas of significant conservation value.**
- ii To advocate sustainable management of coastal and marine ecosystems, and integrated management of terrestrial and marine ecosystems.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Close liaison will be maintained with Manawatu/Wanganui and Hawke's Bay Regional Councils during preparation of regional coastal plans, to ensure that they are not inconsistent with the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement and that appropriate management is effected for areas of significant conservation value.**

(continues)

³⁰ As defined in the Resource Management Act - See Glossary.

³¹ As provided for in the Resource Management Act - see Glossary.

IMPLEMENTATION

- ii Coastal consent applications will be assessed and submissions in opposition will be made where proposals would be in conflict with any policies of the NZCPS.
- iii The Conservancy will liaise closely with the Manawatu/Wanganui and Hawke's Bay Regional Councils during the processing of applications for "restricted coastal activities".
- iv Through input to district plans the Department will advocate for appropriate land uses adjacent to the coast, and wherever possible will advocate that appropriate public access be maintained or enhanced. (see also Section 3.8.2.1).
- v Close liaison will be maintained with iwi in relation to coastal planning and management issues.
- vi The Department will work with the Manawatu/Wanganui and Hawke's Bay Regional Councils in establishing and maintaining their coastal environment monitoring programmes, including appropriate processes for monitoring coastal consents.
- vii The Department will advise regional councils on priorities for the protection and care of important and sensitive coastal and marine areas which may be at risk from oil spills and on matters related to cleanup of wildlife, to assist them in their preparation of Oil Spill Contingency Plans for the "coastal marine area", which are required by the provisions of the Transport Law Reform Bill. (see also Sections 3.5.2 and 3.5.5).

3.3.3.2 Marine Fisheries Advocacy

OBJECTIVES

- i To advocate protection and rehabilitation of fishery habitats within the Conservancy.
- ii To seek to reduce adverse environmental effects of fishing on the marine environment.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will continue to raise fishery habitat protection issues with relevant management agencies at local, regional and national level.
- ii The Department will advocate adoption of policies that result in protection and/or rehabilitation of fishery habitat in Regional Policy Statements, Regional Coastal Plans and district plans.
- iii The Department will provide comment on fisheries issues to the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries (MAF).
- iv Where appropriate the Department will participate in formal fishery management processes (eg, Central Fishery Management Advisory Committee).
- v Staff contact will be maintained with traditional, recreational and commercial users, and MAF Fisheries staff.
- vi The Department will encourage research into local coastal and marine ecosystems.
- vii Records will be kept of incidental mortality of protected species in commercial and recreational fisheries within the Conservancy, and these records will be passed on to holders of national databases where these exist.

3.3.3.3 Coastal Resources Inventory (CRI)

The Coastal Resource Inventory programme was initiated by the Department in 1987. It aimed to fill in the gaps in our knowledge of the coastal environment by identifying areas with important natural, scientific, historic, cultural and spiritual values, and by identifying the threats to these areas. This information gathering process is very important for statutory advocacy purposes, and especially to enable effective input into development of policies and plans of local authorities. The programme has now been discontinued nationally but at a Conservancy level the information gathering will continue, and will be guided by any national coastal information management system.

OBJECTIVES

- i **To continue to identify all areas with important natural and historic values within the coastal environment, and advocate their protection (for related advocacy see Section 3.3.3.1).**
- ii **To identify activities which have adverse effects on any such areas, and seek to reduce and/or eliminate threats to these areas.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The review of information on the Hawke's Bay coastal environment will be ongoing.
- ii Information gathered by CRI will be made available to other agencies and the public in general, to increase awareness of the values of the coastal environment and of the threats to these values, and where necessary, to ensure that policies and plans prepared by local authorities are adequately protecting areas with important natural and historic values.
- iii In conjunction with other relevant management authorities, future survey priorities and opportunities for information sharing will be identified.

Support and encouragement will be given to independent research efforts in the Hawke's Bay coastal environment.
- iv In key areas (eg, Ahuriri Estuary) the Department will carry out further surveys to enable it to continue to provide effective advice and assistance into development of the Regional Policy Statements and Regional Plans of local authorities.

Section 3.4 PROTECTION OF LANDS MANAGED BY THE DEPARTMENT

3.4.1 Introduction

Protection of lands managed by the Department is currently the main focus of activity in the Conservancy.

The principal threats to the Conservancy's indigenous habitats are fire and animal and plant pests. Management is directed at meeting statutory obligations to extinguish fires and control noxious plants, and controlling animal pests which are threatening natural or historic values.

In the coastal and lowland areas, in particular, the areas managed by the Department are typically small and fragmented (see Sections 2.4 and 2.5). This fragmentation means that activities on surrounding lands can have significant impacts on lands managed by the Department. The Department's statutory and non-statutory advocacy role is very important in these areas, to ensure as far as possible that natural and historic values are not adversely affected by activities on surrounding lands. As discussed in various parts of Section Two, integrated land management throughout the Conservancy is highly desirable.

Historic resources can be threatened by natural processes, (fire, weathering, floods, landslides) by human threats (deliberate vandalism, removal of artifacts, trampling of archaeological sites) and by lack of awareness of the importance and vulnerability of some resources. The ways in which the Conservancy will seek to remove or minimise these threats are outlined in the Hawke's Bay Historic Resources Strategy. Historic resources management is accorded priority on the basis of threats to and significance of those resources.

With current resources it is impracticable to embark on any significant restoration work within areas managed by the Department. Management is aimed at preventing the deterioration of natural resources to the extent that restoration is necessary. Restoration programmes, particularly tree planting, have been carried out in specific areas with the assistance of other groups.

Survey, monitoring and research is essential to determine the current status of conservation resources and to assess whether control programmes on introduced plants and animals, and other programmes are achieving the desired results.

In the following section animal and plant pest control and restoration are discussed separately. In day to day management however, this separate approach does not occur, as integration of these and all the other functions of the Department is essential to achieve protection of natural and historic resources in the most effective and cost-efficient manner.

What can and may take place in areas managed by the Department is largely governed by statute. The principal Acts under which the Department administers land within the Conservancy, are the Conservation Act 1987, and the Reserves Act 1977.

Legislation of general application also controls what may occur in areas managed by the Department. For example, the Crown Minerals Act (1991) sets out the obligations of the Minister of Conservation for lands managed by the Department with respect to mining (see Section 3.6.3.6).

The most important Act in terms of regulating uses, works or activities, is the Resource Management Act 1991. (See also Section 3.3). The Crown is bound by this Act. This means that its provisions, and the policies and plans prepared by district and regional councils under it, apply to the Department (and other Crown agencies) as much as they do to any other organization or individual.

The Department, and any other organization or individual undertaking works or activities on land administered by the Department, must apply for any resource consents required by the Act or the plans prepared under it. Section 4 of the Resource Management Act 1991³² gives the Crown limited exemption from resource consents as required by territorial local authorities (district councils). The Act does not contain any exemption for works or activities of the Crown which require consent from regional councils.

3.4.2 Management of Historic Resources³³

The Department is responsible for the conservation of historic resources on lands managed by it. Specific provision for historic reserves is contained in Section 18 of the Reserves Act. Its primary role in historic heritage conservation is to ensure that historic places are protected, but with consideration given for appropriate public use.

Historic resources management is guided by the principles embodied in the Aotearoa Charter, a New Zealand adaption of the International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites.

Hawke's Bay has a rich Maori heritage dating back perhaps seven or eight centuries. However, there are comparatively few recorded Maori archaeological sites located on lands managed by the Department because the bulk of the lands are in the mountainlands. Although Maori used these places as temporary refuges and hunting grounds, very little archaeological surveying has been done in the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks.

Four sites of considerable significance to the tangata whenua are managed by the Department; Otatara and Heipipi Pa (see Section 2.4.11.1), Whakaari and Tiwaewae. There are also some shell midden in the Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve which indicate Maori occupation of that area.

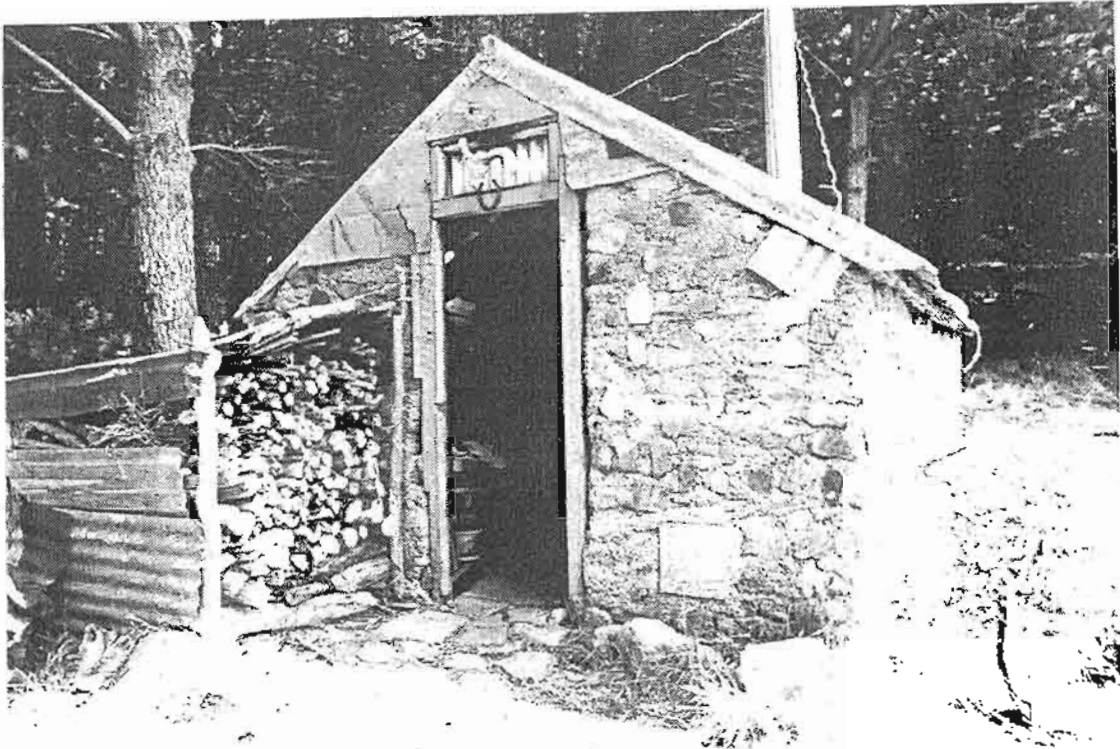
More recent activities in the region have produced historic places associated with exploration, farming, mining, hunting/rabbiting, natural history, recreation, tourism and communications.

Two historic buildings, the former Napier Courthouse and Pendle Hill homestead at Ongaonga, are now used as Department of Conservation offices. The courthouse is the oldest public building in Napier and Pendle Hill homestead is a relocated pioneer farmhouse.

³² See Appendix 17.

³³ This section (3.4.2) covers the Department's responsibilities for conservation of historic resources on lands managed by it. Its responsibilities for historic resources in other areas is covered in Section 3.2.3.

Twelve places of historic importance to the Hawkes Bay Conservancy have been identified as warranting active conservation work, to minimise their physical deterioration and to maintain them for the benefit of future generations (see Appendix 10). As understanding of our resources grows, further places may be added. Priorities for and details of the conservation of these historic resources are outlined in the Hawke's Bay Historic Resources Strategy (see Bibliography).



Shutes Hut in Ruahine Forest Park. This old musterers hut is a rare example in the North Island of a backcountry stone hut, and is still used by hunters and trampers. It is to be restored by the Department (Photo - Neil Fenwick)

OBJECTIVES

- i To effectively manage historic resources on lands managed by the Department after attaining sufficient understanding of the values of those resources and the threats they face.
- ii To protect the historic resources on lands managed by the Department from unnecessary damage from human actions.
- iii To identify and conserve the historic resources on lands managed by the Department which are of high historic significance and provide the best possible balanced representation of the history of that land.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Historic resources will be managed primarily to conserve their historic/archaeological values.
- ii Public access to and enjoyment of historic resources on lands managed by the Department will be facilitated, provided that it does not compromise historic values, or in the case of sites of significance to tangata whenua, does not compromise cultural or spiritual values.
- iii All management of historic resources will be carried out according to the Hawke's Bay Conservancy Historic Resources Strategy. Priority for management will be determined by the threats to and significance of the resources.
- iv An assessment of historic resources on lands managed by the Department will be completed. As new information is collected any appropriate amendments will be made to the register of priority historic sites (see Appendix 10).
- v The Department will consult with and fully involve tangata whenua in management of historic resources of significance to Maori people.
- vi Appropriate interpretation of historic resources may be provided. Any provision of visitor facilities and interpretation at an historic place will not compromise historic values or the significance of the place.
- vii Management of historic places will conform to accepted principles for historic heritage conservation, and comply with legal and statutory requirements.
- viii Situations of potential conflict over the conservation of historic and natural values will be identified and carefully considered before priority is decided.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- ix The Department will seek to raise public awareness of historic values and the threats to these values by public awareness programmes, some of which are outlined in Section 3.9.

3.4.2.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The above objectives and implementation provisions apply across all areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy. In terms of archaeological sites or sites of Maori interest, the lowland and coastal areas are the most affected (as this was where Maori settlement was concentrated). In the two forest parks identification and interpretation of key historic sites associated with European settlement will predominate.

3.4.3 Fire Prevention and Control

As a fire authority, under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, the Department, through the Minister of Conservation, is responsible for fire prevention and control on all Crown lands including (unless specifically exempted) a 1.0 kilometre "fire safety margin" around these areas.

Hawke's Bay is known for its long, hot, dry summers that create very high fire danger levels. A fire action plan must be prepared annually by each rural fire authority. The Department's Hawke's Bay plan will lay out the procedures for reporting fires, people to contact, resources available and fire fighting organizational requirements. All departmental personnel are required to be familiar with the plan and to be available, if called on, to fight fires.

As a fire authority within the Hawke's Bay region the Department participates in a "Mutual Agreement of Understanding" with all other Hawke's Bay fire authorities and rural fire organizations, to provide mutual assistance should that be needed when a wildfire occurs.

OBJECTIVES

- i To prevent or minimise fire damage to areas managed by the Department and other crown lands in Hawke's Bay.
- ii To liaise and co-operate with other fire authorities and the rural fire organizations to provide an effective rural fire fighting force in the Hawke's Bay region.
- iii To meet the various legislative requirements for rural fire suppression.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Conservancy will give absolute priority (with the exception of safety to human life) to the control and suppression of wildfires on lands of the Crown.
- ii Annual training of staff in fire equipment use and fire fighting techniques will take place. Joint training with adjoining fire authorities will be encouraged.
- iii Fire depots of equipment will be located at all staffed Field Centres. Fire equipment will be maintained in a state of immediate readiness.
- iv The Department will be a member of the Hawke's Bay Rural Fire Coordinating (HBRFC) Committee and will, whenever possible participate in joint fire activities (training, publicity, etc) arranged by that committee.
- v As a fire authority, the Department will maintain daily fire weather index (FWI) readings that show fire danger levels and the fluctuations in them, throughout the fire season.
- vi Levels of fire prohibition will be imposed from time to time that are appropriate for the fire hazard that may exist. The FWI readings will form the basis of determining the level of prohibition required.
- vii Appropriate fire danger publicity will be provided to the public during the fire season and the Department will participate in publicity arranged nationally by the Department, the National Rural Fire Authority and HBRFC.
- viii Fire permits will be issued where appropriate for all fires required to be lit within the fire safety margin of any lands of the Crown.
- ix Co-operation will be maintained with neighbouring fire authorities to ensure mutual safety measures are in place for the protection of each others adjoining lands.
- x Fire may be considered as a management tool where appropriate (eg, historic site or wetland management).

3.4.3.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

As indicated above, fire prevention and control is an absolute priority and this applies across all areas in the Conservancy. However, there are particular areas where the threat of fire is more pronounced. These include, Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area and the kanuka forests of eastern Kaweka Forest Park. (see Sections 2.3 and 2.1 respectively).

3.4.4 Animal Pest Control

An animal pest is defined as any introduced animal whose presence or activities results in significant detrimental effects on native plants and animals and ecological processes. Impacts can range from causing collapse of the forest canopy to preventing regeneration of vegetation or preying on or competing with native animals for food.

The Department's responsibilities in regard to the control of animal pests are derived primarily from the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, (in Hawke's Bay Conservancy this applies to deer, pigs, goats and possums) but are subject to specialised provisions in the Conservation Act 1987, the National Parks Act 1980 and the Reserves Act 1977. The Wildlife Act 1953 also provides for control of animal pests, and allows for such control to be applied to some protected or partially protected species where they are causing damage to the land. As a land manager, the Department is also affected by some provisions in the Biosecurity Act 1993 (see also Section 3.4.5).

Animal pests which occur within the Conservancy include goats, deer (red and sika), possums, pigs, rabbits, hares, cats, rodents, mustelids and wasps.

Goats are a threat to natural values in a number of areas in the Conservancy. Their impact is accentuated by the presence of other animal pests, particularly possums and deer. Goats have minimal present commercial value and are of little interest to recreational hunters. They have a high reproductive capability and will increase in numbers and spread to new areas if not controlled by the Department.

Deer are present in areas managed by the Department, in particular in the mountainlands and also in Tarawera and Maungaharuru. While numbers are significantly lower than in the period between 1940-1960, they are increasing in some areas of the Conservancy. They are causing an unacceptable impact on regeneration of the higher altitude mountain beech forests in Kaweka Forest Park. In all areas, except Ruahine Forest Park, the only current means of control is by recreational hunting. If current measures fail to achieve acceptable levels of control, commercial aerial recovery may need to be extended and/or departmental control carried out. The Department will continue to liaise closely with hunting groups to enhance the effectiveness of recreational hunting as a control method.

Possums are widespread throughout the Conservancy and are having a serious and adverse impact upon natural values in some areas. Forests originally covered most of the lowlands, but today this vegetation only exists in small, highly stressed remnants. Many of these areas have Scenic Reserve status and some contain plants and communities at risk either regionally or nationally.

Pigs are found in low numbers in the northern Maungaharuru Ranges, the southern Kaweka Ranges and in several areas on the fringes of the eastern Ruahine Ranges.

Hares are present throughout the Conservancy and their impact on the tussock grasslands and herbfields of the mountainlands is of some (as yet unquantified) concern. (see Section 2.1.7).

Cats, rodents, mustelids, rabbits and wasps occur throughout the Conservancy. Except for localised areas where specific control measures are used to protect a particular species or habitat (eg. rodents on Motu o Kura) or in high use areas (eg. destruction of wasp nests around picnic areas) control programmes have not been established for these animals in the Conservancy. This is due to lack of resources to do this, the inability to effect efficient control, or, in some cases, the lack of information on the impacts of these animals on native plants or animals.

Due to the extent of the animal pest problems, the Department is unable to tackle all problems, in all areas of the Conservancy. Areas are ranked according to natural or historic values at risk where control is possible and practical, and animal control efforts are directed at the highest ranked areas. Areas targeted for animal control work must reflect both national and Conservancy priorities and will therefore be undertaken in accordance with national animal control plans and national guidelines. To obtain a wider animal control effort, the use of recreational and commercial hunters must be encouraged and integrated into the funded pest control work.

At present the priority for animal control in the Conservancy is sustained control of goat populations to low levels in twelve operational areas. As well, possums are controlled in 1800 ha of the lowland reserves, which are representative examples of the former vegetation cover of Hawke's Bay and in approximately 3050 hectares at Ruahine Corner (NW Ruahine Forest Park). Some funds are directed at deer control by providing permits, huts, tracks and access for recreational hunters.

Some control work is carried out by commercial operators for deer and possums. Permits are issued for aerial deer recovery from Ruahine Forest Park.

The Department's animal control work is funded only to protect specific natural values³⁴. Animal control for other reasons (animal health (TB) or local requirements) is the responsibility of either the Animal Health Board or the Hawke's Bay Regional Council and is not the Department's responsibility. However, the Department will continue to liaise and co-operate with the other animal control authorities so that all control work (and particularly that for possums) is as integrated and effective as it can be.

OBJECTIVES

- i To identify all lands of high natural or historic value which are at risk from animal pests.**
- ii To control, and where possible, eradicate animal pests in accordance with national priorities, where they are threatening natural or historic values.**
- iii To encourage other user groups and authorities to act on animal pest problems, and co-ordinate their actions where appropriate.**

³⁴ *Periodic wasp control is also carried out in areas of high recreational use at present.*

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Animal control strategies or plans will be prepared for each pest species, or group of species. They will state where the pest occurs, its impact on natural or historic values, and where and how the pest will be eradicated or controlled³⁵. The appropriate regional councils, hunting groups and other interested parties will be consulted and involved in preparation of these plans.
- ii The Department will establish and regularly re-appraise priorities for animal pest control within the Conservancy. Areas will be prioritised using nationally developed ranking systems, and funding will be sought for the areas of highest ranking.
- iii The highest priorities for possum control in the Conservancy are lowland and Maungaharuru reserve areas which are representative examples of the former vegetation cover of Hawke's Bay, and other areas identified as having high natural values at risk (eg. Ruahine Corner), where control is possible and practical. (see Sections 2.1, 2.3 and 2.4).

Possum control will be integrated whenever possible with control operations carried out by other authorities on adjacent lands.
- iv Goat control will be dependent on national priority rankings but will concentrate on maintaining sustained control of goats at low densities and preventing their spread into areas currently free of them. This will be achieved by aerial and foot hunting.
- v The Department will seek to encourage recreational hunting by maintaining huts and tracks in appropriate areas, maintaining, and where necessary improving, access routes, allowing aerial access to designated areas, and providing up-to-date information to hunters. The Department will work closely with hunting groups to enhance the effectiveness of recreational hunting.
- vi Commercial aerial recovery of deer will be encouraged in defined areas of the Conservancy.
- vii Deer control may be carried out by the Department if recreational and commercial aerial recovery fails to achieve acceptable levels³⁶ of deer control. The level of Departmental deer control carried out will be in accordance with national priorities and funding.

(continues)

³⁵ In Hawke's Bay Conservancy a wasp strategy and a draft goat strategy have been prepared. Possum and deer strategies will be prepared in the future.

³⁶ "Acceptable levels" cannot be defined precisely in terms of numbers of an animal pest. It will be judged on the basis of conservation of biodiversity (See Appendix 16), on soil and water conservation, and on the effects of the pest on any threatened native plant or animal. It will vary from place to place and may change over time as a result of new information or new technology.

IMPLEMENTATION

- viii Monitoring of pig numbers will be carried out through the hunter diary return system. As long as recreational hunters keep numbers to the current low levels the Department will encourage them to take sole responsibility for their control.
- ix The Department will oppose the introduction of potential animal pests into areas where they are not currently present. Where illegal or accidental introductions of new species do occur, all possible steps will be taken to remove them.
- x Where lands managed by the Department adjoin grazing land, effective control of stock will be sought through discussions with landowners and appropriate fencing. The Department will advocate for restrictions on goat farming adjacent, or nearby areas with high natural values, and for goat-free buffer zones in some areas (see Section 3.3.2).
- xi Existing animal and vegetation monitoring programmes will be reviewed, and the most cost-effective and efficient methods of monitoring adopted (see Section 3.4.7)
- xii The Department will continue to liaise and co-operate with local authorities, landowners, and commercial and recreational hunters to achieve co-ordinated action against animal pest problems, whenever possible.
- xiii Rodent, mustelid and cat control may be carried out in specific areas where important natural values are threatened by them, and control is possible and practical.
- xiv In high-use areas where wasps are a nuisance, nests will be destroyed where practicable, in accordance with the National Wasp Control Plan.

3.4.4.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The above objectives and implementation provisions apply across all areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy. However, the animal pests present, their impacts and the natural and historic values at risk vary greatly throughout the Conservancy. While it would be desirable to remove all animal pests, this is not possible or practical and prioritisation is essential.

At present the areas of the Conservancy that receive funding for departmental animal pest control because they meet the national ranking criteria in terms of natural values at risk are:

- i Remnant lowland forest areas - possum control;
- ii Maungaharuru reserves - possum and goat control;
- iii Coastal reserves - possum and goat control;

- iv Ruahine Forest Park - Ruahine Corner/Lake Colenso - possum control;
- v Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks - goat control in specific areas³⁷.

However, within any area of the Conservancy there may be places or habitats of specific natural value which meet the national criteria, where animal control will remain a high priority (eg, possum control at Makahu, in Kaweka Forest Park, to protect mistletoe).

3.4.5 Plant Pest Control

The control of plant pests by the Department is primarily determined by the Conservation Act 1987 and the Reserves Act 1977. These acts require that natural and historic resources be protected, which includes protection from damage by plant pests.

The Department is also affected by some provisions in the Biosecurity Act 1993, which requires all landowners to control noxious plant infestations on their land. The transitional provisions of this Act mean that there will be little change in landowner responsibility, at least until June 1996, and therefore present control programmes can continue. Past this date, plant control programmes that have not been targeted in pest management strategies³⁸ prepared by regional councils, will cease. The Department will liaise with the Regional Councils as they prepare these strategies and will advocate the targeting of plants that are adversely impacting on natural or historic values in the Conservancy.

Due to the extent of the weed problems both on and off areas managed by the Department, it is not within the current resources of the Department to deal with them all. Priority setting is therefore essential. The Department's priority in plant pest control is to concentrate its efforts in areas of highest natural or historic value where the most benefit can be gained. Eradication programmes, where these are possible and practical, and ongoing containment programmes to which the Department is already committed will also be high priorities. Plant pest control must also be integrated with other management techniques, such as fencing, animal control and revegetation.

A number of plant species pose actual or potential threats to natural values in the Conservancy. There are several species of particular note: (listed below), but other species may also become a problem in the future.

i Wilding pines

Along with *Clematis vitalba* (see below) wilding pines are the most significant plant pest in the Conservancy at present.

A number of species, in particular *Pinus contorta*, were planted for erosion control in the Kaweka and to a lesser extent Ruahine Ranges and have now become a problem because of their spread, particularly into open tussock grasslands and alpine areas. (see Section 2.1). The Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks Conservation

³⁷ There is also considerable deer control carried out by recreational and commercial hunters.

³⁸ As required by the Biosecurity Act.

Management Plans set out the approach to be taken to control wilding pines. Their control, in areas where they are adversely impacting on areas of high natural value, is a high priority.

ii *Clematis vitalba*

This is a problem as it invades and smothers native forest. It is a particular problem west of Ruahine Forest Park, but is also present on private lands to the east of the park, in some riverbeds and in some reserves. Continued vigilance is needed to control the spread of this plant (see Sections 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5).

iii *Hydrilla verticillata*

This oxygen weed has become established in three lakes in Hawke's Bay (its only locations in New Zealand). Although it is not posing a threat to natural values in these lakes it could be a source of infestation for other waterways throughout New Zealand. It is very difficult to control by conventional methods and the Department has been investigating a number of other control techniques. (see Sections 2.3 and 2.4).

iv *Buddleja (Buddleja davidii)*

This plant is progressively invading river valleys in the Ruahine Ranges and is likely to become a more prominent problem plant in the future. (see Section 2.1). It poses a threat to native plants and animals and also restricts public access in these areas.

v *Hawkweeds (Hieracium spp)*

These plants are becoming abundant in high country grasslands and herbfields. They are widespread on the Mangaohane Plateau and are threatening the very important botanical values of the Reporoa Bog and Makirikiri Tam areas (see Section 2.1).

vi *Marram Grass (Ammophila arenaria)*

Marram grass is becoming abundant on sandy shores in the Conservancy. In these areas it is progressively excluding native sandbinders, especially pingao and spinifex. Because it binds sand more firmly than the native plants, it can disrupt normal dune dynamics.

vii Willows

Uncontrolled, or poorly managed willow plantings are of concern to the Department, especially in riverbeds and wetland areas, where they have the potential to displace specialised habitats for native plants and animals.

viii Gorse, Broom, Lupins

These plants are becoming widespread in riverbeds in some areas of the Conservancy. Prevention of their spread into braided riverbeds, and removal of them where they currently exist in braided riverbeds is regarded as important by the Department to maintain these specialised habitats for native plants and animals.

ix Japanese honeysuckle (*Lonicera japonica*)

Like *Clematis vitalba*, this plant has the potential to smother native forests. It is spreading throughout the Conservancy, particularly in northern Hawke's Bay.

x Heather (*Calluna vulgaris*).

This plant has become established in Tongariro National Park and is spreading into the western areas of Kaimanawa Forest Park. It is likely that this spread will continue east into the mountainlands of the Conservancy. Hawke's Bay staff will liaise closely with staff from Tongariro-Taupo Conservancy to monitor its spread and assess its threat.



Pinus contorta was planted in parts of the mountainlands for erosion control purposes. It has rapidly invaded tussock grasslands, herbfields and other open areas, displacing or supressing native vegetation. The prevention of further spead and the removal of this plant from areas of high natural value is a priority task in the Conservancy.

OBJECTIVES

- i To identify all lands of high natural or historic value which are at risk from plant pests.
- ii To control, and whenever possible eradicate plant pests where they are threatening natural or historic values.
- iii To liaise with and encourage other landowners and authorities to act on plant pest problems, and where appropriate co-ordinate their actions.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i A Conservancy plant pests strategy will be prepared, followed by operational plant pest plans for each Field Centre. Plans will address the impacts on natural or historic values and what management measures will be taken to eradicate or control the problems. Areas managed by the Department will be ranked according to:
 - Natural and historic values at risk.
 - The actual or potential impact of the plant pests.
 - Practicality of achieving control (extent of the problem and the likelihood of reinfestation).
 - Nature of the plant pests (eg, resistance to control, method of seed dispersal/spread).
 - Problems for neighbours.

Priorities for weed control will be based on the areas receiving the highest ranking.
- ii Control of *Pinus contorta* and other wilding pines in Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks will be implemented according to the policies outlined in the respective management plans, the Conservancy's plant pests strategy, and the respective Field Centre plant pest plans. (see Sections 2.1.7 and 2.2.10).
- iii Any *Clematis vitalba* found on lands managed by the Department will be removed wherever possible. Plants located adjacent to these areas, which pose a threat to natural values will also be targeted for removal in co-operation with the appropriate landowners. (see Sections 2.3.10 and 2.4.10).

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iv The Department will endeavour to control hydrilla in Lakes Opouahi, Waikopiro and Tutira to low levels, and to prevent its spread to other waterways, by methods which have the least impact on natural values³⁹. (see Sections 2.3.10 and 2.4.10).
- v The Department will co-operate with local authorities to reduce the threat to natural values posed by noxious plants. It will advocate that shingle taken from rivers where there are plant pests present is not transported to other areas where the plant could become a problem (see Section 3.3.2). It will also advocate to the Hawke's Bay Regional Council that *Clematis vitalba* be declared a Class B target weed throughout Hawke's Bay⁴⁰.
- vi The Department will continue to investigate new or more effective means of controlling problem plants and will liaise with other organizations involved in this research.
- vii The use of volunteer groups to control plant pests will be encouraged where appropriate.

3.4.5.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The above objectives, and implementation provisions apply across all areas managed by the Department. However, the plant pests present, their impacts and the natural values at risk vary throughout the Conservancy.

Priorities for plant pest control, based on impacts and natural values at risk, remain wilding pines in the two forest parks, (see Section 2.1), continued inspection and removal of *Clematis vitalba* wherever it is found (predominantly in the lowlands west of the Ruahine Ranges) and continued investigations into the options for control of hydrilla in Lakes Tutira, Waikopiro and Opouahi (see Sections 2.3 and 2.4). Other less threatening or more localised plant pests will be controlled where necessary, and as resources permit.

³⁹ *The Department's long-term objective is eradication of hydrilla, but with currently available techniques this is not considered possible.*

⁴⁰ *This would require the landowner to be responsible for control of this plant.*

3.4.6 Restoration⁴¹

Restoration in its broadest sense encompasses a wide range of functions and management techniques, some of which are covered elsewhere in this CMS, (eg, animal and plant pest control, tree planting, bird recovery and threatened plant management, and fencing). Its principles and practices are threaded throughout conservation management as undertaken by the Department.

Restoration is carried out to rehabilitate areas where natural or historic values have been severely diminished, or in some cases lost. This may have occurred because of a single event (eg, a fire) or by longer term, insidious, but no less dramatic deterioration of ecosystems by plant and animal pests, or drainage of wetlands. In some cases restoration becomes necessary or desirable in high-use areas (eg, around huts or camping areas).

The Department has undertaken restoration of Motu o Kura in conjunction with its Maori owners, by removing Norway rats from the island. Motu o Kura is significant in that it is the only island of any size between Wairoa and Wellington. It has possible potential for introductions of threatened flora and fauna, subject to the approval of its Maori owners.



There are many opportunities for greater community involvement in conservation work, particularly in revegetation programmes.

⁴¹ "Restoration", as defined in the Glossary, means " ... returning a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state ... ". However, in practice, this is not always achievable or desirable. "Restoration" in this CMS encompasses revegetation, enhancement, or rehabilitation of a degraded ecosystem or population to an undegraded condition (which may be different from its original condition).

The Department has also co-ordinated and assisted other groups, such as The Landcare Foundation and the Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society, in tree planting programmes (eg, at Tutira, Mohi Bush and Cape Kidnappers).

OBJECTIVES

- i To prevent wherever possible the deterioration of the natural environment to the extent that restoration work is necessary.
- ii To attempt to restore areas of high natural or historic value which have been degraded by events such as fires, inappropriate use, or wild animals and plant pests, as resources allow. To consider the need for restoration work following natural catastrophic events.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Priority areas for restoration work would be those with high natural or historic values at risk, or where there are significant potential natural values unrepresented elsewhere in the Conservancy, and where restoration is possible and practical.
- ii The Department will co-ordinate and involve other groups and landowners in restoration activities, and may assist and co-operate with other groups involved with restoration activities on private lands.
- iii Monitoring and aftercare of restored areas will be a priority. Restoration will not be attempted if aftercare is not possible.
- iv Revegetation programmes on lands managed by the Department will use species which are native to the local area and sourced from local genetic stock wherever possible. In some instances other species may be used for particular short-term management purposes (eg, shelter, to allow establishment of other plants, or plants which are good food sources for native birds).

3.4.6.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

There are many areas in the Conservancy where restoration work (particularly revegetation) would be desirable. This is particularly so in the lowland and coastal areas where the native vegetation cover has been almost entirely removed. Some revegetation programmes have been carried out on lands managed by the Department in the lowlands and coastal areas with the co-operation of community groups (at Cape Kidnappers and Mohi Bush). The priority for such works will continue to be in the lowland and coastal areas, but there may be specific sites in any area of the Conservancy which may become priorities for restoration in the future. However, as indicated in Section 3.4.1, it is unlikely, with current resources, that the Department will embark on any significant restoration work in the foreseeable future. The involvement of local community groups in appropriate restoration works will be encouraged.

3.4.7 Survey/Monitoring/Research

The full range and current status of natural and historic resources in areas managed by the Department is inadequately known. Surveys will help fill these gaps, and will be directed to where the needs are most pressing.

Change is taking place everywhere, both in natural ecosystems and in the human use of them. Monitoring to assess the rate of change and its direction is necessary to highlight management priorities, especially in the most fragile ecosystems of the Conservancy (alpine grasslands and herbfields, subalpine forests, lowland forest remnants, coastal dunelands and wetlands).

With targeted surveying, monitoring and research more will be known about the Conservancy, and conservation management will be better guided to the areas of greatest need, using the more effective techniques.

OBJECTIVES

- i To carry out surveys of natural and historic resources within the Conservancy, where there is inadequate information at present.**
- ii To monitor changes in the status and condition of the most fragile ecosystems and most threatened plants and animals of the Conservancy.**
- iii To initiate research where changes are greatest but the causes are not obvious, and co-operate with other agencies in research of benefit to conservation.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Research will be directed to where rapid change is threatening fragile ecosystems and/or threatened plants and animals, and the causes are unclear.**
- ii Priorities for survey, monitoring and research will be established and regularly reviewed (indicative priority areas are listed below in "Survey/monitoring/research needs").**
- iii Appropriate monitoring will be carried out as part of all pest control or restoration programmes.**
- iv Research and monitoring of introduced animals and plants and their effects on native plants and animals will continue in the most efficient and cost-effective way, as resources allow.**
- v A database of conservation resources and survey/research results will be maintained and updated as necessary.**

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- vi Records will be kept of any threatened species and their locations (see Section 3.5).
- vii The public will be encouraged to report sightings of any threatened species (see Section 3.5).

3.4.7.1 Survey/Monitoring/Research Needs

The following is a list of survey, monitoring and research needs. It is not definitive, but gives an indication of areas where there is insufficient information at present and of current priorities (in no particular order). It may alter as further information becomes available or as national priorities change.

Survey

- Continue PNAP surveys of the Conservancy.
- Surveys of "neglected" biota⁴² (invertebrates, lizards, bats, "common" birds, freshwater fish, seashore life) and threatened species in the Conservancy (see Sections 3.5.2, 3.5.3 and each "place" in Section 2). Key areas include the interiors of Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks, Maungaharuru and coastal areas.

Monitoring

- Monitoring of Fragile Ecosystems
The impact of introduced mammals (browsers and predators) on:
 - mountainland forests, and alpine areas;
 - lowland forest remnants;
 - coastal dunes, estuaries, seabird colonies;
 - threatened plants (eg, mistletoe);
 - wetlands.
- Seabird colonies, as indicators of the health of marine and coastal ecosystems (eg, Cape Kidnappers, Waitangi estuary tern colony).
- Impact of people on natural or historic values. Key areas include seabird colonies, sand dunes, estuaries, alpine herbfields and wetlands.
- Threatened biota. (see Appendix 2).

⁴² There are other "neglected" biota not included here (eg, bryophytes, lichens, algae and fungi). However, with current resources, priority for research in these areas is considered to be less than for the listed species.

- Cultural taking of plant material - effects of any approved taking on ecosystems and on individual species.
- Effectiveness of introduced plant and animal control programmes and species protection programmes.

Research

- Causes of deterioration of ecosystems.
- Causes of decline of threatened biota.
- Effects of uncontrolled weeds (eg, Buddleja, Japanese honeysuckle) on native species and ecosystems.
- Biological controls for plant and animal pests.
- Cost-effective non-biological controls for plant and animal pests.
- Cost-effective monitoring techniques.

3.4.8 Wildlife Sanctuaries, Wildlife Refuges and Wildlife Management Reserves

Wildlife sanctuaries, wildlife refuges and wildlife management reserves can be gazetted in accordance with the Wildlife Act 1953. They can be located on private or Crown land.

There are currently eight wildlife refuges and one wildlife management reserve in the Conservancy (see appropriate maps, in Volume II, Section 6). There are no wildlife sanctuaries in the Conservancy.

Wildlife Refuges (see Land Inventory Sheets in Section 7, Volume II).

1. Lake Tutira
2. Tukituki River
3. Ahuriri
4. Horseshoe Lake
5. Hols (Waikoau)
6. Gwavas (Puahanui Bush)
7. Ngaruroro Rivermouth
8. Hartree

Only two of the above wildlife refuges (Lake Tutira and Ahuriri) are within areas managed by the Department.

Wildlife Management Reserves

1. Morrison's Lake (see Land Inventory Sheet 80019).
2. Lake Hatuma (see Land Inventory Sheet 80228).

Both lakes are within areas managed by the Department.

OBJECTIVES

- i To manage, in conjunction with the occupier of the land, all current or potential wildlife sanctuaries, wildlife refuges and wildlife management reserves to protect wildlife, and to enhance wildlife habitats.
- ii To endeavour to ensure compliance with any notice creating the above areas (see Section 3.11).

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will manage the two existing wildlife refuges and the one wildlife management reserve located on lands managed by the Department to protect wildlife and enhance wildlife habitat values.
- ii The Department will advocate through statutory processes and by direct liaison with the occupiers of land, for the protection and, where appropriate, enhancement of wildlife habitats in the wildlife refuges in the Conservancy located on private land.
- iii The Department will continue to co-operate with the appropriate Fish and Game Council and landowners to ensure that the public is complying with any restrictions imposed on the entry and use of any current or potential wildlife sanctuaries, wildlife refuges or wildlife management reserves.
- iv The Department will review the status of current wildlife refuges on private lands, and if appropriate change their status.

Section 3.5 PROTECTED SPECIES

3.5.1 Introduction

The Department's responsibilities include protection of New Zealand's native animals and protection of their habitats within areas managed by the Department⁴³. It can also advocate protection of their habitats on private lands. It has responsibilities for protection of wildlife on all lands under the provisions of the Wildlife Act 1953, and for wildlife and wildlife habitats on lands managed by it, under the Conservation Act 1987 and the Reserves Act 1977. It is also responsible for the protection of marine mammals under the provisions of the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.

In contrast with animals, specific plants in New Zealand are not protected as such by legislation. They are only legally protected if they occur within areas protected by the Reserves Act 1977, the National Parks Act 1980, the Conservation Act 1987, the Queen Elizabeth II National Trust Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, or by conservation covenants. Plants outside these areas, no matter how endangered, have little legal protection⁴⁴, and the Department has only an advocacy responsibility for their protection.

3.5.2 Protected Animals (Birds)

Protection of habitat (which includes control or removal of plant and animal pests) to prevent population decline, is the first priority for management. In this way protection measures are directed towards sustaining the viability of resident populations and avoiding direct manipulation (eg. island transfers, captive rearing etc). However, for threatened or vulnerable species more active management programmes may be required to prevent further decline or extinction.

The Department of Conservation's effectiveness in protected species work is dependent to a large extent on its ability to prioritise. Protection of habitat remains the key to long-term survival of species. In terms of threatened species the Department of Conservation has set national priorities for their conservation based on species distinctiveness, status, threats, vulnerability and human values attached to them (see Appendix 2).

As indicated in Appendix 2, there are nineteen bird species within Hawke's Bay Conservancy identified in these priority categories for threatened species conservation. There are no species within category A (the highest priority category), but ten birds are included in Category B.

In assessing priorities for conservation of bird species the Hawke's Bay Conservancy has taken into account these national priorities, and the requirements and recommendations of any national species recovery plans. It has also considered regional threats and regional values. Because much of Hawke's Bay's environment has been highly modified by human settlement, the remaining natural habitats are very important for protected species. There are also

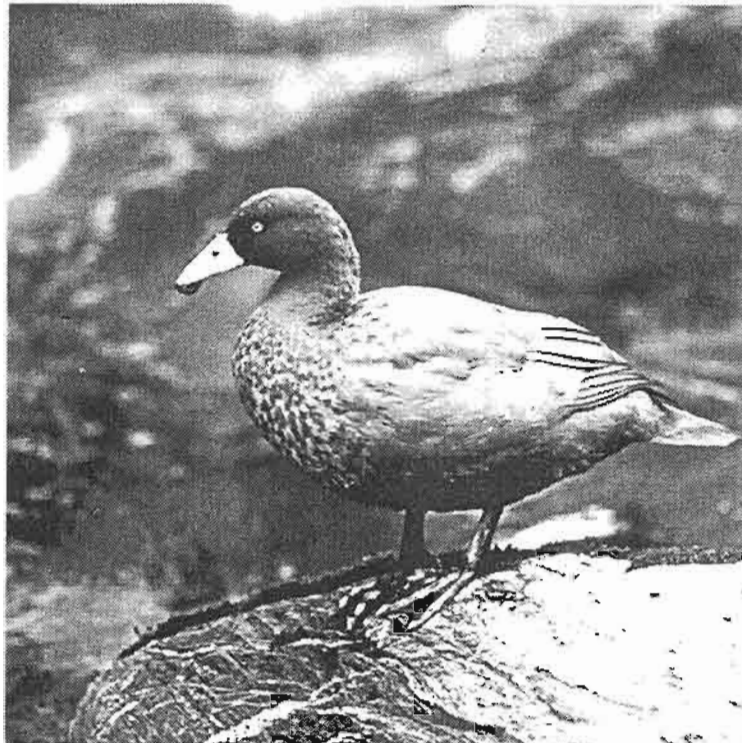
⁴³ *Under the Wildlife Act 1953 there is a general presumption that native animals (excluding insects) are absolutely protected throughout New Zealand. However there are some exceptions, which are listed in the schedules to that Act. Insects which are protected are listed separately in the 7th Schedule.*

⁴⁴ *The Native Plants Protection Act, 1934 gives limited protection.*

specific areas in the Conservancy which are particularly important. They include, Cape Kidnappers gannet colony and the Porangahau and Ahuriri estuaries which are very important for sea and estuarine bird species, Kaweka Forest Park and Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area for kiwi, the northern Ruahine Range for blue duck, and braided river habitats for banded dotterel and black-fronted dotterel.

The main focus of bird conservation activities in recent years has been monitoring/census programmes for threatened bird species (blue duck, kiwi) and management of the Cape Kidnappers gannet colony. More effort is required in these areas.

However, there is also a need to obtain better knowledge of the distribution and abundance of lesser known species such as falcon, kakariki, kaka, bittern, and dabchick, to determine whether more active management programmes are required to prevent their decline.



The threatened blue duck is present in several catchments in the mountainlands. Monitoring of and protection of these populations is a high priority in the Conservancy.

OBJECTIVES

- i To maintain the full diversity of native animal species and communities found in the Conservancy and to enhance populations of the most threatened species where possible.
- ii To set priorities for management based on national priorities, and on the species significance in the Conservancy.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i All active species management will be carried out according to a plan based on national and conservancy-wide priorities. Consideration will also be given to the practicality of achieving protection of certain species when setting priorities.
- ii Blue duck management effort in the short-term will concentrate on monitoring and active management of the known population in the northern Ruahine Range, and on the completion of survey work in other catchments. (see Section 2.1).
- iii Kiwi management in the short-term will concentrate on survey work in areas where there is insufficient knowledge of kiwi presence/absence (eg, Boundary Stream, Mokai Patea Range) and in monitoring known populations (eg, Eastern Kaweka Range, Waitere). (see Sections 2.1 and 2.3).
- iv Active management of blue duck and kiwi may include banding, creating dog-free areas and enhanced wild animal control (see Sections 3.4.4 and 3.8.2.4).
- v Distribution and population data on species where there is currently insufficient information will be an ongoing priority. Species include bittern, dabchick, black-fronted dotterel, New Zealand dotterel, New Zealand falcon and kaka.
- vi Surveys of threatened species (as identified by national guidelines) will be conducted to determine more clearly their status and management requirements within the Conservancy.
- vii Wild animal control, weed control, provision of facilities and visitor management programmes will be compatible, and where appropriate, integrated with protected species management.
- viii The public and interest groups will be encouraged to become involved in collection, survey, monitoring and ongoing conservation efforts.
- ix The disturbance, removal or taking of any live native birds protected under the Wildlife Act will not be allowed, except for specific conservation management reasons (see Section 3.6.4).
- x The Conservancy will take an active role in advocating the protection of native bird habitats on private lands.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- xi In the event of an oil spill the Department will undertake the care and clean up of wildlife, in co-operation with volunteer groups.

3.5.3 Protected Animals (Other Species)

Other terrestrial and freshwater animals that the Department has responsibility for managing and conserving are the protected species of bats, reptiles, invertebrates, amphibians and indigenous freshwater fish.

The legislation that deals specifically with the protection of these animals includes: the Wildlife Act 1953 (for amphibians, invertebrates, reptiles and bats), and the Conservation Act 1987 and Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983 (for indigenous freshwater fish).

As indicated in Appendix 2, there are three fish species, two invertebrate species, one reptile and one mammal within Hawke's Bay identified in the priority categories for threatened species conservation. Future survey work may well uncover other populations of these and previously unrecorded species.

An active whitebait (inanga) fishery exists in many river systems in the Conservancy. Eels are also present and are a sought-after food source by local Maori. There is a concern by Maori at commercial exploitation of the eel fishery.

Commercial fishing in reserves is almost entirely precluded. However commercial fishing in areas administered under the Conservation Act may be authorised under certain circumstances.

The Conservation Management Plans recently prepared for Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks will require regulations to limit the taking of indigenous fish. These regulations have been sought by the Department.

OBJECTIVES

- i To maintain the full diversity of native animal species and communities found in the Conservancy and to enhance populations of the most threatened species where possible.
- ii To set priorities for management based on national priorities and on the species significance within the Conservancy.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Conservancy will ensure protection is provided, in accordance with the relevant Acts and Regulations, for all species of protected animals.
- ii The Conservancy will take an active role in advocating the protection of native animals and their habitats.
- iii The disturbance, removal or taking of any live native animal protected under the Wildlife Act will not be allowed, except for specific conservation management reasons (see Section 3.6.4).
- iv A high priority will be given to the surveying of all suitable habitats of threatened species of bats, lizards, freshwater fish and invertebrates, to determine more clearly their status and management requirements.
- v Protection and management emphasis in the Conservancy is to be placed initially on nationally recognised priority species (see Appendix 2). This will be carried out in accordance with approved recovery plans and programmes, or where approved by the Director, Protected Species Division.
- vi Appropriate habitat protection mechanisms, such as conservation covenants, will be implemented to conserve populations or communities of threatened animals on private lands.
- vii Identification of whitebait (inanga) spawning grounds will continue. Conservation efforts will be directed towards protection and enhancement of their spawning areas⁴⁵ and enforcement of the Whitebait Fishing Regulations 1991.
- viii Investigations will be made into the viability of expanding the size of the existing small-scaled skink habitats with the aim of increasing the population.
- ix On completing the survey phase for native bats throughout the Conservancy and the location of all major roosts, appropriate protection and management mechanisms will be implemented.
- x Existing freshwater fisheries⁴⁶ values will be maintained primarily through advocating good water and soil conservation practices (ie, protecting their habitat). (see also Section 3.10.4).

(continues)

⁴⁵ *Enhancement works have already commenced, with the assistance of the Hawke's Bay Regional Council.*

⁴⁶ *This applies to both indigenous and sports fisheries. However, protection of indigenous species remains the highest priority.*

IMPLEMENTATION

- xi Restrictions imposed by regulations on the taking of indigenous fish from waters will not apply to takings for Maori cultural purposes, research or conservation purposes except where the species is threatened or the demand is excessive, or the method of taking is considered inappropriate. Each application to take indigenous fish for the above purposes will be considered on its merits (see also Section 3.6.4).
- xii Generally it will not be appropriate to give any person permission to undertake a business or occupation which involves the commercial removal of indigenous freshwater fish (including eels) from the following areas managed by the Department identified as having high natural or historic values (see also Section 3.6.4).
- Lake Opouahi
 - Lake Tutira
 - Lake Waikopiro
 - Lake Orakai
 - Morrisons Lake
 - Ahuriri Estuary
 - Kuripapango (Kaweka Lakes)
 - Lake Colenso
 - Mohaka River (within Kaweka Forest Park)
 - Ngaruroro River (within Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks)
- (see Appendix 14 for further details on location and natural and historic values of these areas).
- The Department will consult with the appropriate agencies and landowners, and will recommend that restrictions or controls be placed on the taking of indigenous fish (including eels) for commercial purposes from other areas identified as having high natural or historic values. The areas identified to date are listed in Appendix 15 (see also Section 3.6.4).
- xiii Whenever practicable fish passage should be provided for where damming, culverting, roading and bridge construction and water diversion works are planned. This will be advocated through the resource consent process under the Resource Management Act 1991 and the fish pass provisions of the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations 1983.
- xiv Appropriate protective mechanisms will be implemented (if required) on the discovery of new populations of the native land snail *Powelliphanta marchanti* outside of existing protected areas. Any threats to their continued existence or abundance will be controlled and where possible eliminated.

3.5.3.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy (protected animals - birds and other species)

The objective and implementation provisions relating to the Department's responsibilities for protected animals apply across all public and private lands in the Conservancy. On lands managed by the Department there is a responsibility for habitat protection. This is the primary and best means of protection for native animals. However, in the case of threatened species which have been identified as priorities for conservation, extra measures may be required to secure their protection (see Appendix 2).

Within each "place" in Section two of this CMS priority species are identified. There may also be other species considered as priorities for protection because of their significance in the Hawke's Bay context. With current technology and knowledge, it may be impractical to attempt protection of some threatened species in some areas of the Conservancy, beyond efforts to protect habitat (eg, kaka in Ruahine Forest Park). However, the Department's capability to better control or eliminate predators and competitors of threatened species could improve over the operative period of this CMS as a result of on-going research.

3.5.4 Threatened Plants

3.5.4.1 Identification of Threatened Species

Identification of plant species which are threatened is a vital first step in their protection. There are few plants in Hawke's Bay listed as threatened nationally (see Appendix 2). However, there are several more plants that are very rare, such as mistletoes. In addition there are species that have very high cultural value, such as pingao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*) and for which Hawke's Bay holds one of the few remaining strongholds. Other species, whilst common nationally, have distribution limits in Hawke's Bay and therefore warrant protection.

OBJECTIVES

- i To continue efforts to identify threatened plants in the Conservancy.**
- ii To continue monitoring to determine what management, if any, is required to protect them.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Survey work will be directed towards identification and location of threatened plants.**
- ii Training will be given to staff and volunteers to heighten their awareness of plants at risk.**

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iii Botanists and botanical enthusiasts will be directed towards areas that are either little known botanically or where it is suspected that threatened plants could exist.
- iv PNAP surveys will be directed towards areas that are little known botanically, and will have at least a partial focus on plants at risk.
- v Links will be maintained with other conservancies, Head Office and botanical agencies to ensure the threatened plant information relevant to Hawke's Bay is updated.
- vi Links will be maintained with tangata whenua groups to seek to ensure that they and the Department are aware of plants of cultural value at risk.
- vii Information on the plight of threatened plants will be made available to the public, in order to increase awareness of their vulnerability. The Department will encourage people to report any sightings of threatened plants to it.

3.5.4.2 Priorities for Management/Protection of Threatened Plant Species

National guidelines have been prepared by the Department which rank threatened species according to their priority for management. Priorities were determined by:

- Taxonomic distinctiveness;
- Status of the species;
- Threats facing the species;
- Vulnerability of the species;
- Human values.

There are few plants within the Conservancy included in the three national priority categories (see Appendix 2). However, the majority of plants in Hawke's Bay Conservancy at threat are threatened with extinction in the Ecological District within which they occur or are at the limits of their geographical distribution. They are therefore significant in the Hawke's Bay context.

Management of threatened plants largely lies in the protection of their habitat in the wild (removing the threats to them, such as domestic stock, feral animals, land clearing, or logging activities). However, it may be necessary to protect individual plants, (eg, by putting possum proof cages around mistletoes), to enhance wild populations with plantings of propagated material, or to otherwise manipulate the habitat to encourage natural regeneration. As an adjunct, if wild populations are irretrievable, cultivation in nurseries and gardens may be done.

If threatened plants are discovered on private land, both legal and physical protection of the site will be encouraged.

OBJECTIVE

To maintain the diversity of native plant species and communities found in the Conservancy and to enhance populations of the most threatened species where possible.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Where threatened plants exist on lands managed by the Department every effort will be made to eliminate the threats to their survival. This may include enhanced wild animal and plant pest control, regulation of public use and publicity to increase public awareness.

Where it is necessary, extra measures, such as fencing off threatened species, or removal of plants from the wild, may be considered to ensure their survival.
- ii On private lands that have threatened plants, the Department will explore ways of both physically and legally protecting the plants, in consultation with landowners (see Section 3.2.2).
- iii Priorities for threatened plant protection will be determined by the degree of threat, the urgency of the situation and the importance placed on each species in both the national and local context. Priorities will be regularly reviewed.
- iv Management will be directed to protection and enhancement in the wild in the first instance. That includes removal or minimisation of the threats, planting to increase populations and legal protection if required.
- v Cultivation of threatened plants away from their wild sites may be done to provide a backup to very vulnerable populations, or where wild populations cannot be saved.
- vi Regular monitoring of known threatened plant populations will be carried out to check on their condition.
- vii The Conservancy will work closely with tangata whenua on threatened plant protection programmes, especially involving culturally valued plants. The taking of threatened plants will not be allowed except where this is considered essential for conservation management purposes (see Section 3.6.4).
- viii The Conservancy will take an active role in advocating the protection of threatened native plants and their habitats.

3.5.4.3 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

- Mountainlands (see 2.1)

In the alpine herbfields and grasslands of the Ruahine and Kaweka Ranges there are several plant species found nowhere else and others at the limits of their geographic distribution range. Their survival depends on maintenance of the alpine vegetation in good condition. Control of browsing mammals (hares, deer and possums) and weeds (hawkweeds and introduced pines) is essential.

The unprotected high-altitude wetlands of Ngamatea East Swamp, Makirikiri Tarns and Reporoa Bog also have rare plants. Their maintenance depends on the control of the same browsing mammals and weeds. In addition, it requires the exclusion of the domestic stock that browse there.

Only tiny remnants of the mistletoes which used to colour the forest in summer remain in the upland forests, mostly growing on mountain beech trees. They are so susceptible to browsing animals (deer and possums) that these animals must be totally excluded from reaching them if they are to survive. The current intensive control and exclosure operations at places like Makahu Saddle will need to continue, and methods explored to propagate mistletoes.

- Tarawera (see 2.2)

At present, no threatened plants are known to exist in this area, although some are probably present. Future surveys will be directed towards searching for such plants.

- Maungaharuru (see 2.3)

The majority of plants at threat occur either on the west-facing cliffs on the crest of the range, on the crest itself, in small wet hollows near the crest, or in the red tussock grassland areas in the southern part of the range. Protection of these areas from the impacts of domestic stock (especially cattle) and feral animals (especially goats) should ensure their survival. In November 1993, two kakabeak (*Clianthus puniceus*) were found within Maungaharuru. Kakabeak is included in the list of threatened plant species considered to be priorities for conservation action by the Department. (see Section 2.3 and Appendix 2).

- Lowlands (see Section 2.4)

There are several threatened plant species in the lowlands, including various mistletoes, *Pittosporum obcordatum*, *Teucrium parvifolium*, the orchid *Bulbophyllum tuberculatum* and an un-named coprosma. These are all contained in small unprotected forest remnants, except for the area where the orchid grows. Their survival depends on obtaining legal and physical protection for these remnants. The main threats are domestic stock, possums and drought.

- Coastal (see Section 2.5)

None of the areas where the threatened plants of the coast grow currently has protective status or is managed for conservation.

The dune systems where pingao persists (Rangaiika, Ocean Beach, Taits Beach, Porangahau and Cape Turnagain) require such protection and management. The main needs are exclusion of domestic stock and off-road vehicles, control of rabbits and control of marram grass.

Porangahau dunes also have one of the few occurrences of matagouri in the region. Stock, fires, off-road vehicles and rabbits are the main threats.

Renga lily occurs between Cook Strait and East Cape only at Kairakau. Legal protection, fencing to exclude farm animals, control of possums and control of silver poplars are required.

Maintenance of the regionally characteristic cliff plants *Senecio banksii* and *Chionochloa flavicans* depends on legal and physical protection of coastal cliff systems. Those at Cape Turnagain, Kairakau, Waipatiki, Aropaoanui and Moeangiangi contain the best populations.

Muehlenbeckia ephedroides only occurs at Te Awanga in Hawke's Bay and persists despite total lack of protection. Weed, vehicle and subdivision controls are required.

3.5.5 Marine Mammal Protection

The Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 provides for the protection, conservation and management of all marine mammals such as whales, dolphins and seals, within New Zealand and within New Zealand's fisheries waters. Included in this legislation are provisions controlling the taking and keeping of marine mammals for specific purposes, and the disposal of sick or dead specimens.

The species most commonly frequenting the Hawke's Bay coastal waters include, common and dusky dolphins, the occasional rare beaked-whale (Gray's and Cuvier's), pygmy-sperm, sperm, right, pilot and killer whales, and NZ fur, elephant and leopard seals. Apart from fur seals that have well established winter haul-outs at Cape Turnagain and Motu-o-Kura there are no resident populations. All of these occur as transient and migratory animals.

Most whale and dolphin strandings along our coastline occur as single animal strandings (usually old, sick or dying individuals) and mass strandings happen only rarely. The Department controls stranded whale and dolphin rescue attempts and when necessary destroys sick and injured marine mammals. It disposes of sought after material such as whale jaw bones and teeth for cultural purposes, and these and other skeletal and tissue material for research and museum purposes.

OBJECTIVES

- i To provide protection for marine mammals in accordance with requirements of the Marine Mammals Protection Act.
- ii To maximise use of dead specimens for the benefit of conservation and science, and for cultural material purposes.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Conservancy will ensure marine mammals are accorded protection as provided for in the Marine Mammals Protection Act.
- ii The Department will actively seek information on and document sightings of marine mammals observed along the coast and records will be passed on to holders of national databases where they exist..
- iii The Conservancy Marine Mammal Stranding Contingency Plan will be maintained so that the Department is prepared to respond rapidly and effectively to whale and dolphin strandings and injured seal occurrences. Training will be provided to enhance response capability.
- iv The Department will maximise the use of dead marine mammal specimens for the purpose of increasing scientific knowledge and understanding of the ecology of the various species. The taking of detailed measurements and tissue samples is a priority requirement. Suitable skeletal material and teeth may be taken, for use by museums or for cultural purposes. Disposal of this material will be done in accordance with national policy.
- v Any allocation of whalebone and teeth for cultural purposes will be made on the recommendation of the Conservancy's Cultural Materials Committee and in consultation with tangata whenua from the area where such material was recovered. The Department will encourage the use of alternative materials to whale bone (see Section 3.6.4).
- vi Administration of Napier Marineland's marine mammal permits will be attended to as required, and inspections made to ensure all conditions are complied with.
- vii The Conservancy will take an active role in advocating the protection of marine mammals and their habitats by input into Regional Coastal Policies, identification of areas of significant natural or historic values, and involvement in the Fishery Assessment Working Groups (run by the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries and also involving the Department, the fishing industry and environmental groups).
- viii In the event of an oil spill causing injury or distress to seal species, the Department will, whenever practicable, attempt to rehabilitate the affected mammals.

3.5.6 Convention in Trade in Endangered Species (CITES) and Protected Species Permitting

CITES applies to the import, export, or re-export of living specimens or derivatives of plants and animals, as listed in the Trade in Endangered Species (TIES) Act 1989 as endangered, threatened or exploited. This Act is mainly policed at ports of entry and the major compliance role is carried out by Customs and Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries Border Patrol staff. The Hawke's Bay Conservancy office at Napier provides CITES information and advice, and supplies CITES application forms to prospective importers and exporters of TIES Act listed species. Administration of the permitting system is carried out by the Department's Head Office in Wellington. Species which have been seized locally include clams, corals and tortoise shells.

The Conservancy co-ordinates a local committee of the three protection agencies involved in CITES activities and regular meetings are held to discuss and act on law enforcement and permitting problems and issues. Some law enforcement assistance is provided when required.

Protected species permitting is administered by the Department under the relevant provisions of the Wildlife Act 1953 (birds, and all other protected animals including certain invertebrates) and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 (all marine mammals). In most instances the Regional Conservator holds the delegated powers to issue authorities to hold in captivity or transfer allowable species. Animals thus held remain the property of the Crown.

Protected species that are widespread in captivity are the red and yellow-crowned parakeets and certain lizards. Other species may be held as part of organised captive breeding programmes for threatened species. The department favours the holding of these species by institutions rather than individuals.

OBJECTIVE

To ensure compliance by the public in all matters concerning trade in endangered species and the keeping of protected species in captivity (in accordance with legislative requirements and current departmental policy), and to manage associated permitting requirements fairly and efficiently.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Regular meetings of Napier-based staff from the border protection agencies of Customs and the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries will be convened by Conservancy staff to ensure continued co-operation and effectiveness in enforcing TIES Act requirements.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- ii Efficient systems will be maintained to deal with public enquiries concerning CITES and TIES Act matters, and information and application forms will be provided on request.
- iii Staff training will be provided to ensure permitting, compliance and enforcement duties are carried out professionally, efficiently and effectively.
- iv Record systems will be maintained to manage protected species permit requirements, in accordance with departmental policy and the relevant provisions of the Conservation Act 1987, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Reserves Act 1977 and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.

Section 3.6 COMMERCIAL AND EXTRACTIVE USES OF AREAS MANAGED BY THE DEPARTMENT

3.6.1 Commercial Recreation and Tourism Use of Areas managed by the Department

In the main, the legislation and policies under which the Department administers land under its control allow for commercial use, subject to such use being compatible with the protection of natural and historic values and enjoyment of the area by other users. Recreation Reserves, however, differ in that they are administered for the purposes of providing for recreation and sporting activities and for the protection of the natural environment.

Commercial operators on lands managed by the Department are referred to as "concessionaires" and their authority to operate are leases, licences or permits. These authorisations can be for up to sixty years.

A concession is granted to authorise a trade, business or occupation to be carried out by the private sector on lands managed by the Department. Such concessions can extend the range of opportunities for outdoor recreation, but they must be complementary to those provided directly by the Department, and compatible with the purpose for which the area is administered.

The Department has produced a draft Concessions Policy which covers recreation or tourism concessions granted under the National Parks, Reserves and Conservation Acts. It deals with planning for and classification of concessions, requirements for concession applications and conditions required in concession agreements.

In the Hawke's Bay Conservancy there are currently eighteen medium term (ie. five years) concession permits issued for Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks. In addition there is a five year licence and a one year trial concession licence which allow for the transportation of visitors to the Cape Kidnappers Reserves.

The types of recreation/tourism commercial operations currently authorised by the above permits and licences are as follows:

- helicopter transportation services
- guided hunting trips
- guided fishing trips
- guided rafting trips
- guided tramping tours
- heli-skiing
- tractor transportation service

With the expected increase in tourism in the region there may be more interest in the future in using areas managed by the Department for these and other, as yet unknown recreational/tourism-based activities.

It is essential that the Department has systems in place to ensure that any proposal is compatible with the protection and preservation of natural and historic resources, and also to monitor the impacts of commercial activities.

Although commercial activity in the majority of areas managed by the Department in Hawke's Bay Conservancy is low, there is a period of time over the roar (April-May) where there is a high level of helicopter activity in the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks. This could potentially impact on natural values and on the enjoyment of the area by other users.



Helicopter transportation of hunters, trampers and anglers is the main type of commercial activity on lands managed by the Department in the Conservancy. This use is almost exclusively in the two forest parks.

OBJECTIVE

To allow wider visitor enjoyment of areas managed by the Department, through authorising commercial recreation and tourism activities that are compatible with the natural and historic values of them, and the purpose for which the area is administered and do not significantly affect other recreational users of the area.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will assess and process applications for commercial recreation use of lands managed by it in accordance with approved or draft policy covering concessions on lands managed by it. It will decline any applications that are incompatible with protection of natural and historic resources, or in the case of recreational reserves, are not necessary to enable the public to obtain the benefit and enjoyment of the reserve or for the convenience of persons using the reserve.

A list of current commercial recreation/tourism activities is included in Section 3.6.1. Those and other recreation/tourism activities may be permitted subject to the above provisions.
- ii Applications that benefit conservation through wild animal control, nature tourism or education will be favoured over those that do not do this.
- iii Public consultation and Conservation Board input will be sought for applications for major⁴⁷ concessions and may be sought for other applications.
- iv The Department will monitor the impacts of existing commercial operators in areas managed by the Department to ensure that conditions of operations (including safety) are adhered to.
- v The Department will liaise closely with local tourism organizations to assess visitor demand and to ensure that any promotion of lands managed by the Department is consistent with protection of natural and historic values. If deemed to be appropriate and of benefit to conservation the Department may advertise for interest in operating a particular type of commercial activity in specific areas of the Conservancy.
- vi Concessionaires and their clients may use facilities, such as huts and campgrounds, on a "first-come, first-served basis" with other users (unless otherwise determined by the Department) but will not be given exclusive use of any facility.
- vii Concessionaires must take primary responsibility for the safety of their clients⁴⁸ (see Section 3.8.2.7).
- viii The Department may display appropriate promotional material from concessionaires at its offices and provide a directory of concessionaires operating on lands managed by it.
- ix The Department will maintain a close liaison with local concessionaires, concessionaires associations and the aviation industry.

(continues)

⁴⁷ As defined in the approved or draft policy covering concessions on land managed by the Department.

⁴⁸ It is recognised that aerial concessionaires cannot be held responsible for their clients except during flights and landings.

IMPLEMENTATION

- x The Department will investigate all reports of unauthorised commercial activities on lands managed by it.

3.6.1.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

At present, with the exception of the concession at Cape Kidnappers, all concession operators are in the two forest parks. However, this may alter in the future, especially if the predicted growth in overseas visitors is realised and the tourist industry seeks new areas in which to locate its operations.

Helicopter transportation of trampers, anglers, and particularly hunters is currently the predominant commercial activity. Helicopter use by hunters can have positive benefits for animal control, but it can also impact on natural values and other users. As outlined in the Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Park Conservation Management Plans, and referred to in Sections 2.1 and 3.8.2.2 of this document, helicopter use will be regulated, and monitored.

3.6.2 Recreational (Non-Commercial) Use of Areas Managed by the Department

From time to time the Department receives applications from recreation groups to site non-commercial facilities on lands managed by it. These could include sports facilities, scout halls, or educational facilities. In the past such facilities have tended to be located in Recreation Reserves.

OBJECTIVE

To consider each application to site non-commercial recreation/tourism facilities in areas managed by the Department on its merits, as determined by the provisions of the Conservation Act, the Reserves Act 1977, or any other appropriate Act.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i In assessing applications to site non-commercial recreation/tourism facilities in areas managed by the Department the status and classification of the land and its management objectives will be taken into account. The Department may approve any applications that are compatible with those factors, or with protection of natural and historic values.
- ii Existing buildings or structures providing a community benefit may be permitted to continue, provided natural or historic values are not adversely affected.

3.6.3 Non-Recreation/Tourism Leases, Licences and Statutory Consents

Section 14(1) of the Conservation Act states that leases and licences may not be granted over lands held under the Conservation Act unless the CMS provides for the issue of leases and licences and such right is in conformity with this CMS or any Conservation Management Plan.

This contrasts with the Reserves Act in that proposals which are not in conformity with this CMS are not forbidden but must be advertised.

Within the Hawke's Bay Conservancy, the Department currently administers a number of non-recreation and non-tourism related leases, licences and permits for use of areas managed by the Department, under the Conservation Act 1987 and Reserves Act 1977. These types of rights can be categorised as follows:

- i) The grazing of parts of lands managed by the Department (where natural or historic values are not compromised and/or grazing is a necessary management tool), and the location of beehives on these lands.
- ii) Sites for telecommunications systems.
- iii) Access easements through areas managed by the Department to private properties.
- iv) Easements for pipelines and other utilities across areas managed by the Department.
- v) Bach sites and private houses on areas managed by the Department.

Other potential activities could relate to access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, activities associated with the generation of power and defence/police use of lands managed by the Department.

The different categories of rights detailed above may be authorised by way of a lease, easement, licence or permit (see Glossary). Only those activities described in the following Sections 3.6.3.1 to 3.6.3.8 (inclusive) may be authorised. Other activities which are not recreation/tourism uses will not be permitted.

A schedule of all current leases, licences, easements and permits is available at the Conservancy Office in Napier.

3.6.3.1 Grazing

Currently, there are forty seven grazing leases or licences over lands managed by the Department in the Hawke's Bay Conservancy. Most of these rights have been in place for many years and comprise relatively small areas of grass alongside watercourses, fenced in with adjoining farm properties along practicable fence lines. In most cases it would be uneconomic to survey off these areas in order that they may be sold. It is essential in many cases that these areas are grazed to control unwanted grass and weeds, to keep open public access and to minimise fire danger.

OBJECTIVE

To grant new grazing rights and re-issue existing rights, only if grazing is performing a conservation or management objective.

IMPLEMENTATION

In implementing the above objective the following general principles, (which are in accordance with the "Grazing Guidelines" issued by the Department in July 1991) will be followed in determining whether or not grazing arrangements involving lands managed under the Conservation or Reserves Acts are acceptable.

- i) New rights or the re-issue of rights for grazing purposes will only be issued in situations where such grazing helps toward control of unwanted grass or other growth, where grazing does not compromise natural or historic values, and where retirement from grazing or disposal of the area is not an appropriate option.
- ii) Grazing can be an appropriate and acceptable means of preventing historic or other sites from becoming overgrown, but the number and class of stock allowed will be controlled to avoid any risk of damage to the site.
- iii) Grazing arrangements may be made to maintain an area in the short-term or to prevent or reduce establishment of weeds prior to revegetation or other restoration programmes, if the Regional Conservator is satisfied that natural and historic values will not be compromised.
- iv) Existing rights will be reviewed on expiry, or if necessary sooner, where natural or historic values are found to be compromised. In such cases arrangements will be terminated or rights will be re-negotiated (if contractually permissible), with terms and conditions designed to achieve protection of natural and historic values.
- v) Rentals charged for grazing rights will generally be subject to fair market rentals. Where conditions or limitations are placed on stocking or farming regimes for conservation purposes a reduction may be necessary.

3.6.3.2 Bee Keeping

Currently no rights exist for beehives on lands managed by the Department within the Conservancy, although there are a number of hives located on them.

OBJECTIVE

To allow beehives to be sited on land managed by the Department where natural values are not affected and the presence of hives will not cause inconvenience to the public.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i In conjunction with other conservation work, the beehives on lands managed by the Department will be located and an attempt will be made to identify owners.
- ii Beehives will be licensed only where public use of the area will not be adversely affected.
- iii Where there is evidence that the presence of bees is significantly threatening fauna, the licence will be revoked and the beehives will be removed.
- iv All apiarists applying for a right must be registered with the Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries.
- v Rentals charged for beehives on lands managed by the Department will generally be subject to fair market rentals.

3.6.3.3 Telecommunication Systems⁴⁹

There are three licensed telecommunications systems located on lands managed by the Department in the Conservancy; two sites at Wharite Peak, (in Ruahine Forest Park), and one air navigation aid in the Ahuriri Conservation Area. In addition there are a number of earthquake and flood recording devices maintained by the Crown Research Institutes and Regional Councils respectively. The Department has telecommunication sites on the Wakarara Range and on Mt Kuripapango. There may be a need for further sites for departmental use in the future.

Deregulation of the telecommunication industry and the advent of new technology is likely to result in greater interest in locating such facilities on lands managed by the Department. It is important to ensure that provision of facilities will not compromise natural or historic values and that the true environmental costs associated with these activities are met by the operators.

⁴⁹ This includes earthquake, flood recording or other such devices.

OBJECTIVE

To ensure protection of historic areas, landforms, landscapes and other natural values from inappropriate development, and provide for new sites for telecommunication facilities on lands managed by the Department only where they cannot be provided elsewhere.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i New telecommunication facilities will only be accommodated within areas managed by the Department where this is consistent with the values and protected area status of the area, and no other suitable alternative is available.
- ii Any applications to site a telecommunication facility within areas managed by the Department will require an environmental impact assessment, and will be subject to the Department's national guidelines⁵⁰ for location of such facilities on lands managed by the Department.
- iii The Department will require that facilities are co-located wherever possible.
- iv Subject to other statutory provisions, any approved facility or site will be subject to a resource rental set by the Department.
- v Public use of these sites will not be restricted any more than is essential for safety and security.
- vi The Department will seek to ensure that significant natural and historic resources on private land are protected from inappropriately sited telecommunication facilities, by input into regional and district plans and by monitoring resource consent applications.

3.6.3.4 Easements

The most common forms of easement the Department deals with relate to access, and the right to convey water, sewage, telephones or transmission lines over land managed by the Department.

Existing works (as defined by the Electricity Act 1992) which were legally installed, are able to remain on lands managed by the Department in the Conservancy.

The Department may grant new easements where:

- the right sought cannot be located on private land;
- natural or historic values are not adversely affected and;
- it does not significantly restrict existing public use.

⁵⁰ *"Interim" at present.*

The Conservation Act 1987 and Reserves Act 1977 all have different provisions relating to the granting of easements. Processing an easement often involves public advertising, but this may be unnecessary where public use and natural or historic values will not be significantly affected.

OBJECTIVE

To allow easements where they will not adversely affect natural or historic values or public use and their purposes cannot be achieved by other means on private lands.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Easement applications which could compromise important natural or historic values may be refused.
- ii Easement conditions will reflect natural and historic values and public use of the area.
- iii Easement fees will generally reflect fair market values but may take into account any public benefit.
- iv All costs associated with the processing of an easement will be borne by the applicant

3.6.3.5 Bach Sites and Private Houses

Introduction

There are currently twenty three leases that were issued by the former Department of Lands and Survey over bach sites at Pourerere Beach. These leases are for terms of 33 years (being perpetually renewable) and conditions of the lease agreements require that any proposals to alter buildings on the lease areas and/or transfers of interest are consented to by the Department of Conservation.

The former Department of Lands and Survey and NZ Forest Service undertook extensive investigations and removal programmes in respect of unauthorised baches and private houses on lands administered by them and as a result there are no unauthorised baches or private houses on lands managed by the Department of Conservation in the Hawke's Bay Conservancy.

OBJECTIVE

To restrict the use of lands managed by the Department for private or commercial residential buildings.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i No new private baches or houses will be permitted on lands managed by the Department.
- ii Baches located on lands managed by the Department which are subject to existing lease agreements will be administered in terms of those agreements. Approval to rebuild and/or alter buildings may be granted in respect of existing licenced baches provided local authority requirements are met.
- iii Unauthorised private baches and houses that are discovered will be removed, unless their historic value is such that there may be justification for their protection.

3.6.3.6 Prospecting, Exploration and Mining⁵¹

Currently, there no mining activities being undertaken on lands managed by the Department in the Conservancy, and there have been few such activities in the past. However copper mining, mainly on a explorative basis, was carried out in the Coppermine Creek Area of Ruahine Forest Park from the late 1880's until the 1930's, and exploration licences have been granted over much of the Ruahine and Kaweka Ranges. With current knowledge it is unlikely that there will be pressure from mining interests to utilise lands managed by the Department in the Conservancy.

However, lands managed by the Department are open to applications for exploration and mining activities. Any permanent closure of Crown lands for such purposes requires a joint recommendation of the Ministers of Conservation and Energy. (Crown Minerals Act 1991).

If a company or an individual seeks a prospecting, exploration or mining licence, it must first apply for a land access arrangement from the appropriate landowner. In the case of areas managed by the Department, this is the Minister of Conservation.

In terms of the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Minister of Conservation can deny access for mining activities for land held or managed under the Conservation Act, or any other Act specified in the First Schedule to the Act.

In considering a request for access the Minister must have regard to:

1. The objectives of any Act under which the land is administered.
2. Any purpose for which the land is held.
3. Any policy statement or management plan of the Crown in relation to the land.

⁵¹ As defined in the Crown Minerals Act 1991.

4. The safeguards against any potential adverse effects of the work.
5. Such other matters as the Minister considers relevant.

The access arrangements are agreed to, and enforced, under the Crown Minerals Act. There are no public input provisions. Access arrangements can be made subject to conditions or declined outright. Mining will normally be inappropriate in high-use areas and areas of high scenic, scientific, natural or cultural value, due to the potential effects of mining on these values and the purposes for which they are held and managed.

The Department may also become involved, through its advocacy role, in resource consent applications for mining and quarrying activities in areas not managed by it.

OBJECTIVE

- i) **To ensure that any prospecting, exploration or mining activity has minimal adverse impact on the natural, historic or public use values of areas managed by the Department.**
- ii) **To ensure that any proposed mining activity is properly assessed, to enable any potential adverse impacts to be avoided, remedied or mitigated and to ensure adequate compensation.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Prospecting and exploration proposals will be assessed on their merits.
- ii Applicants for access arrangements must supply the appropriate requirements of Section 58 of the Crown Minerals Act. They should also demonstrate that the ensuing impacts of the mining and associated infrastructures will be minimal and that the land and water habitat values, and recreational and historic values of the area will not be compromised (for example, mining by hand methods, or by use of small suction dredges outside of fish spawning and major recreational use times may be acceptable). The following matters are relevant (but note, do not limit) in any consideration of an application:
 - whether the restoration proposed is adequate and can be achieved; and
 - whether there is adequate financial protection by way of an insurance or bond to ensure compliance with conditions and remedial action; and
 - the adequacy of the compensation offered (if any) for access to the land for prospecting, exploration or mining.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iii The Department will advocate the protection from mining or quarrying of sites outside areas managed by the Department where their effects would adversely impact on natural, historic, cultural or landscape values, or where there is potential for adverse off-site impacts.
- iv The Department will endeavour to ensure that appropriate performance standards for mining and quarrying are incorporated into policies and plans developed by local authorities, and will monitor resource consent applications involving mining and quarrying in the Conservancy generally.

3.6.3.7 Power Generation

Most hydro proposals would be inconsistent with the objectives of the Acts under which lands managed by the Department are held, and would be unable to be approved.

Hydro investigations have been carried out on several rivers in the Conservancy - the Ngaruroro, Rangitikei, Pohangina and Mohaka Rivers. These rivers have high wild, scenic and recreational values, and any future proposals for hydro developments on them, or other important natural rivers would be closely scrutinised by the Department, and opposed if these values would be downgraded. A draft National Water Conservation order (NWCO) has been recommended for sections of Mohaka River, and a NWCO exists on the middle and upper reaches of the Rangitikei River.

In the future other forms of power generation, such as wind power, are likely to become more prevalent. Any proposals to use lands or waterways managed by the Department for power generation purposes will be assessed by the Department and each case considered on its merits and on whether it is permissible in terms of the legislation affecting the area.

OBJECTIVE

To assess all proposals for power generation:

- i On lands or waters managed by the Department in terms of the legislation affecting the area; or
- ii On other areas with high natural, historic or recreation values; and
- iii To oppose any proposals that could threaten the values in (i) and (ii).

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will advocate through statutory and non statutory processes, the protection of lands and waters of high natural, historic or recreation value from developments which could threaten those values.
- ii Where developments occur, the Department will seek appropriate conditions to protect natural, historic, recreation and public access values.
- iii The Department will seek the protection of and/or support other agencies in protection of important waterways in the Conservancy, by NWCO's or other means, as resources allow.
- iv The Department will continue to support the case for the protection of the Mohaka River under a NWCO.

3.6.3.8 Defence/Police Use of Lands Managed by the Department

The Military Manoeuvres Act 1915 provides that the Governor General may, by proclamation, declare lands including lands managed by the Department, to be available for military manoeuvres. However, any other intended defence or police use requires the approval of the Department.

The size and remoteness of some parts of the Conservancy, particularly the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks, make them suitable for defence training and search and rescue exercises, and some such activities have taken place in the past. Some areas may continue to be made available for defence training and search and rescue exercises providing the activities do not compromise natural or historic values or impact on recreational use.

OBJECTIVE

To make provision, on request, for defence and search and rescue uses on lands managed by the Department, if such uses are consistent with protection of the natural, recreation and historic values of the area.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Requests for defence and search and rescue exercises on lands managed by the Department will be considered on their merits. Where the proposed activities are unsuitable within a particular area, or would impose unacceptable environmental costs, they will not be permitted.
- ii Use of lands managed by the Department for defence or search and rescues will be regulated by issue of permits, with strict conditions to ensure protection of natural or historic values.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iii Where lands are the subject of a proclamation under the Military Manoeuvres Act 1915, the Department will liaise with defence authorities to ensure that environmental damage is minimised.

3.6.4 Taking of Plants and Animals

The prime objective of the Conservation Act is to ensure the protection and preservation of New Zealand's natural and historic resources. The Act also gives some discretion to allow the taking of plants and animals, subject to guidance from this CMS.

The Act (Section 4) requires the Department to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. Section 30 enables the Director-General, subject to a CMS or a CMP, to authorise the taking of plants from conservation areas, including for traditional Maori purposes. It is not possible to permit the taking of indigenous wood for reward or gain unless it is for a traditional Maori purpose.

Other Acts (eg. Reserves Act [Sections 42 and 49]) and National Parks Act [Section 5]) also deal with the taking of plants for specific types of land. There is no specific reference in these Acts to taking for traditional Maori purposes, nor is there a specific limitation on commercial activities.

There may also be valid scientific, educational and conservation management reasons for the collection of plants and animals (or parts thereof).

The Hawke's Bay Conservancy of the Department in consultation with iwi has put in place a Cultural Materials Committee (CMC) structure to provide expert advice on the merits of all applications by iwi for timber, plant material, bird feathers, whale bone and other types of cultural material. The members of the committee are all Maori representing Hawke's Bay iwi and collectively possess a comprehensive appreciation of traditional culture and art and other aspects of tikanga Māori. The CMC has the task of distinguishing between applications which are of significant cultural importance from those which, for various reasons, do not meet the criteria established by the Department (see Appendix 7).

A guiding principle followed in establishing the CMC was that decisions about the allocation of cultural materials should be made at the iwi or tribal confederation level. This does not preclude applications being made for materials from individuals or groups from other regions but recognises the special rights or claims of tangata whenua to taonga from their own tribal area.

OBJECTIVES

- i To permit appropriate requests for taking of live native animals⁵² protected under the Wildlife Act, only for conservation management reasons⁵³.
- ii To permit appropriate requests for taking of dead native animals (or parts thereof) protected under the Wildlife Act, for scientific, educational, conservation management, or traditional Maori cultural purposes.
- iii To permit appropriate requests for taking of native plant material for scientific, educational or conservation management purposes.
- iv To permit appropriate requests for taking of native plant material for traditional Maori purposes.
- v To refer applications for traditional Maori purposes to the Cultural Materials Committee, which will then make a recommendation to the Regional Conservator.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The taking of plants and animals which are threatened or locally uncommon will only be permitted where this is considered essential for conservation management purposes.
- ii No taking of plants or animals will be permitted from ecological areas or nature reserves except where necessary for conservation management purposes.
- iii Generally it will not be appropriate to give any person permission to undertake a business or occupation which involves the commercial removal of indigenous freshwater fish (including eels) from the following areas managed by the Department (see also Section 3.5.3):
 - Lake Opouahi
 - Lake Tutira
 - Lake Waikopiro

(continues)

⁵² Under the Wildlife Act 1953 there is a general presumption that native animals (excluding insects) are absolutely protected throughout New Zealand. However there are some exceptions, which are listed in the schedules to that Act. Insects which are protected are listed separately in the 7th Schedule. Also, in various legislation fish are treated differently to land animals.

⁵³ Except for animals classified as game birds under the Wildlife Act. These may be taken, subject to the relevant provisions of that Act.

IMPLEMENTATION

- Lake Orakai
 - Morrisons Lake
 - Ahuriri Estuary
 - Kuripapango (Kaweka) Lakes
 - Lake Colenso (Kokopunui)
 - Mohaka River (within Kaweka Forest Park)
 - Ngaruroro River (within Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks)
- (See appendix 14 for further details on location and natural and historic values of these areas).

The Department will consult with the appropriate agencies and landowners and will recommend that restrictions or controls be placed on the taking of indigenous fish (including eels) for commercial purposes from other areas identified as having high natural or historic values. The areas identified to date are listed in Appendix 15 (see also Section 3.5.3).

- iv Whenever possible applicants for native plant materials will be diverted to sources on private lands.
- v The Conservancy will actively encourage and support the Cultural Materials Committee system to vet and make recommendations on applications for taking of plants and dead animal material for traditional Maori purposes.
- vi The taking of plants (or parts thereof) for scientific or educational purposes will be limited to species which are in abundance, and only minimal quantities will be approved. (This is further restricted by implementations (i) and (ii) above).
- vii The taking of dead animals (or parts thereof) for scientific or educational purposes may be permitted. Each case will be considered on its merits.
- viii All applications for scientific purposes will be assessed (in part) by the Conservancy Advisory Scientist.
- ix All applications for collection from lands managed by the Department⁵⁴ will be assessed by Field Centre Managers for availability and abundance.
- x All decisions on applications will be made by the Regional Conservator, taking into account the advice of the Field Centre Manager and the Conservancy Advisory Scientist, and/or the Cultural Materials Committee (as appropriate).

3.6.4.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The above objectives and implementation provisions apply across all areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy. In the case of animals protected under the Wildlife Act, they apply to all lands in the Conservancy irrespective of ownership.

⁵⁴ As opposed to applications for materials held by the Department (such as dead birds).

Section 3.7 LAND ADMINISTRATION

The Department has a number of statutory responsibilities under the Conservation Act and Reserves Act in respect of land it administers. These actions include acquisition of land, exchanges of land, classifications of reserves, disposal of land and setting apart of land for conservation purposes. It is also required by legislation to process certain applications on behalf of clients such as local authorities. This is undertaken on a cost recovery basis and is client driven.

The Reserves, Conservation and Wildlife Acts contain provisions for the classification of lands. The purpose of protected areas classification is to ensure there is adequate control and management and appropriate levels of development and preservation for different areas managed by the Department. Protected area status can be significant in determining how an area is perceived by the public, and the level of use it receives.

The reserves classification exercise for Hawke's Bay Conservancy was undertaken by the former Department of Lands and Survey. However, there is a need to review the status of many other areas, as the existing status may not necessarily reflect their natural values. There are several large conservation areas adjoining Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks which the Department considers should be included in the Parks, and a number of other areas throughout the Conservancy which require investigation. Also, there are some reserves under departmental control which may be more appropriately managed through being vested in a territorial authority. Conversely there are other reserves, which are currently vested in, or controlled and managed by other authorities which may be more appropriately managed directly by the Department.

Disposal of most areas managed by the Department is subject to public notification, with many of the required approvals and consents being the responsibilities of other agencies. Departmental Land Disposal Guidelines and Procedures set out the rationale for disposal, and procedures to be followed in this process.

It is envisaged that the number of cases to formally set areas of land apart for conservation purposes will diminish over the next few years. However, it is expected that more time will be devoted to administration of protected private land agreements and covenants following the completion of stage one of the Protected Natural Areas programme for the Conservancy (see Section 3.2.2).

OBJECTIVE

To achieve the most appropriate statutory and administrative framework for the protection of natural or historic values on lands managed by the Department.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will formulate a register of potential areas for status investigation.
- ii The Department will review the status of areas under its management and proceed to appropriately alter them if necessary. This may result in a change of status to give greater protection to natural or historic values, or it may result in disposals or exchanges of lands which have low natural or historic value.
- iii The Department will ensure that reserves (including those controlled and managed by other organizations) are managed for their primary purpose.
- iv The Department will review vested reserves in the Conservancy and will endeavour to cancel the vesting if desirable in terms of protection of natural or historic values. It will also consider whether some reserves would be more appropriately vested in other authorities.
- v The Department will review all areas which are currently controlled and managed by other authorities to determine whether they may be better controlled directly by the Department.
- vi The Hawke's Bay Conservancy will, in conjunction with shared staff in Wanganui, develop an effective checking mechanism for entries in the National Land Register.
- vii All long-outstanding exchanges and allocations of land will be identified with a view to completing them. (All of these were the subject of previously negotiated agreements by the Department's parent organizations, which at that time had gone through the necessary approvals).

3.7.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The above objective and implementation provisions apply across all areas of the Conservancy. Investigations into the appropriate classification for Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area (see Section 2.3) and Stoney Creek and Tarawera Conservation Areas (See Section 2.2) are priorities, as are the proposed inclusions in the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks of the numerous conservation areas surrounding them (see Section 2.1).

Section 3.8 RECREATION OPPORTUNITIES - ACCESS, FACILITIES, SERVICES

3.8.1 Introduction

The Role of the Department in Recreation

The Department has responsibilities under various enactments to provide for and manage recreation on land that it manages.

Under the Conservation Act (Section 6(e)) the Department is given the responsibility of fostering the use of natural and historic resources for recreation and allowing their use for tourism, provided this is consistent with the conservation of natural and historic resources.

The Reserves Act also gives the Department responsibilities for providing for recreation. Different types of reserves have differing levels of recreational emphasis, with more emphasis on recreation in recreation reserves.

The New Zealand Walkways Act states that the Department has a role in promoting the establishment of walkways and in the provision of associated facilities.

Providing for and managing recreation is an important activity of the Department. For many people it is recreational use of lands managed by the Department that provides their main link with natural areas. It can raise their awareness of natural and historic values and issues, and can help build support for conservation. This link will be nurtured by providing appropriate recreational opportunities, facilities, and services.

Within the Conservancy there is a wide range of environments providing a variety of recreational opportunities - from remote mountain areas in the two forest parks, to lowland reserves and coastal areas. Recreational hunting and tramping and, increasingly, whitewater rafting, canoeing and angling, are the main uses of backcountry areas, while in lowland and coastal areas short walks, picnicking and swimming are predominant.

Visitors to the Hawke's Bay Conservancy

There is a large population base located in or adjacent to the Conservancy. Napier/Hastings now has the fourth largest urban population in New Zealand, and the southern areas of the Conservancy are easily accessed from the Palmerston North area.

The Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks are popular with visitors from all over the North Island, but predominantly from the lower half of it.

Currently the vast majority of people visiting areas managed by the Department are from the local area, but the Hawke's Bay area is receiving an increasing number of domestic and overseas visitors. While not an integral part of the high profile tourism circuit, it is becoming more popular, especially for free and independent-type tourists. The area is being strongly marketed overseas by the Hawke's Bay Tourism Board, and tourism forecasts to the year 2000 predict total tourism numbers to the Napier area increasing by 30% (with domestic increasing by 19% and international tourism numbers by 77%). These visitors are likely to place increasing pressure on some conservation resources and facilities.

Recreational Planning

Recreational planning must take into account the likelihood of increasing demand, so visitor needs can be met without compromising natural or historic values or unduly affecting other recreational users. This should be done in liaison with other recreational providers in the areas, so that the range of recreational opportunities and services can be considered in their totality.

In the past the focus for recreational activity was in the two forest parks. There is now increasing demand for opportunities and facilities on the fringes of the parks, and in areas close to population centres. Other agencies are also involved in providing recreational opportunities in the Conservancy. The Department will encourage them to provide recreational opportunities which complement those available on lands managed by the Department.

The coastal areas of the Conservancy are also high-use areas and careful planning is necessary, in conjunction with the relevant local authorities, to provide for this use and to ensure that it does not damage significant natural and historic values.

The Conservancy has developed a recreation strategy which will give strategic direction for recreational use over the next ten years. It provides greater detail than this CMS on current and future recreational use and opportunities, on issues relating to recreational use, and on relationships between the Department and other agencies involved in providing recreational opportunities.

The strategy identifies areas which are likely to receive the highest usage in the future. They include roadend areas of the two forest parks, easily accessible areas with natural or cultural interest and rural areas with high scenic values. Visits to the remote areas of the forest parks are also expected to increase.

It also highlights potential restrictions on use, and discusses issues or conflicts which may develop because of increased recreational use. These include conflicts between hunters and other users of remote areas, the inadequacy of land-based recreational opportunities close to urban areas, and the restrictions on access to some areas. It then recommends a number of ways of reducing or preventing conflicts, and outlines measures that could be taken to increase recreational opportunities close to urban areas, and to improve access. Further details can be obtained from the Conservancy Recreation Strategy (see Bibliography).

OBJECTIVE

To provide for a diversity of recreational uses on lands managed by the Department, consistent with protection of natural and historic resources, or in the case of recreation reserves, where it is consistent with the purpose for which the reserve is held.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Conservancy Recreation Strategy will form the basis for the future recreational planning in the Conservancy.
- ii The Department will use the Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS) technique (see Glossary) or other such techniques in order to provide a range of recreational opportunities on areas managed by it.
- iii The Department will continue to record visitor numbers and assess visitor needs, as resources allow. Priority will be given to high-use areas, or areas where visitor use could potentially impact on areas with high natural or historic values and where there is inadequate information at present.
- iv The following factors will be taken into account in determining the provision of recreational facilities, or in the introduction of new recreational opportunities:
 - * the natural and historic values of the area;
 - * the potential impact of recreational use on these values;
 - * the availability of recreational opportunities in other areas of the Conservancy and in adjacent Conservancies;
 - * the demand;
 - * benefits gained by the Department, such as animal pest control undertaken by recreational hunters;
 - * the opportunity to advocate conservation to visitors.
 - * in the case of recreation reserves, the purpose for which the reserve is held.
- v The Department will encourage the participation of other agencies and interest groups in planning and provision of recreational opportunities, especially those not available on lands managed by the Department. (These areas are likely to be concentrated near population centres and along the coast).
- vi The Department will advocate the retention of unformed paper roads and the creation of easements or other forms of rights-of-way which provide access to important recreation opportunities on lands managed by the Department or to coastal areas.



*There are many opportunities for remote recreational activities in the Conservancy.
Here, two trampers ford the Harkness Stream, in Kaweka Forest Park.*

3.8.2 Recreational Use

3.8.2.1 Visitor Access - General

Public access to lands managed by the Department is normally encouraged, unless restrictions are necessary to protect natural or historic values, or for safety reasons.

Walking access to most areas is generally unrestricted, although in some classes of reserves, such as nature reserves, sanctuaries and scientific reserves, access may be limited to protect the values for which they are held. Other areas may need to be temporarily closed, or public use restricted, for conservation management purposes (eg, habitat rehabilitation of a heavily used camping area, protection of a rare plant or animal, or revegetation of an eroding site). In such cases all reasonable steps would be taken by the Department to make the public aware of any closure and the reasons for it.

Adequate road and foot access to the boundaries of many areas managed by the Department is important to facilitate their use and enjoyment by the public. Over much of the Conservancy access is satisfactory, but the public has indicated the need for improved access to some areas (see below).

OBJECTIVES

- i To encourage foot access within areas managed by the Department and only restrict activities and access where it is necessary to protect natural or historic values, for public safety, for management reasons or to comply with statutory provisions.
- ii To make every endeavour to maintain, and where necessary enhance, vehicle and foot access to the boundaries of areas managed by the Department for recreational users.
- iii To encourage provision of safe and unrestricted foot access to the countryside, consistent with Section 3 of the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The adequacy of public access will be monitored as part of the recreation planning programme.
- ii The Department will maintain, and where necessary endeavour to enhance, walking access to areas managed by it and to the countryside, by any suitable means including easements, walkways⁵⁵, rights-of-way and other legally enforceable agreements, and also by liaison and co-operation with adjoining landowners, and local authorities.
- iii The rights and obligations of visitors using legal access-ways to areas managed by the Department will be sign-posted on all access-ways which cross private land.
- iv The Department will liaise with local authorities and Transit NZ Ltd to endeavour to ensure that road access is maintained, or improved, to the boundaries of lands managed by it, and will liaise with the Automobile Association to maintain or improve directional signposting to high-use areas managed by it.
- v Areas of land managed by the Department may be closed to public entry for public safety, conservation and management purposes. Where private land is involved (eg, as access to areas managed by the Department, or with walkways) areas may be temporarily closed for farm management or other purposes in accordance with contractual provisions (eg, Big Hill access and Tutira Walkway).
- vi If areas are closed to public entry, all reasonable steps will be taken by the Department to make the public aware of the closure and the reasons for it.

⁵⁵ See Glossary.

3.8.2.1.1 Implications For Specific Places in the Conservancy

As indicated in Section 3.8.2.1, an improvement in access to some areas managed by the Department is needed.

Access to some areas of Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks is unsatisfactory (see Section 2.1). The parks are surrounded by private lands and access is by a range of legal and negotiated rights of ways. Further signposting is required in some areas to inform the public of their rights and responsibilities in crossing private lands.

Knowledge of and access to many of the marginal strips and small conservation areas in the Conservancy is also inadequate. This applies particularly to the lowland and coastal areas where lands managed by the Department are generally surrounded by developed pastoral farming lands. (see Sections 2.4 and 2.5).

3.8.2.2 Aircraft Access

The term 'aircraft' in this section refers to fixed wing planes, helicopters, microlights and balloons, but excludes non-motorised hang gliders and parapentes. However, in this Conservancy it currently applies almost exclusively to helicopters, as there is only one fixed wing airstrip located on land managed by the Department (see below).

Aircraft, particularly helicopters, provide an important means of access for management purposes, with minimal physical impact compared to roading and some other means of access. They are used increasingly by recreationists, particularly hunters, to gain access to remote areas of the Conservancy (almost exclusively the two forest parks). They can play an important role in wild animal control, as hunters are able to access areas that would otherwise be difficult to reach. However aircraft use can conflict with other use and affect wildlife, and therefore needs to be regulated.

The Ministry of Transport controls the activities of all aircraft in the air, but the Department can control landings on lands managed by it.

Currently, helicopters are permitted to land at designated landing sites in the two forest parks. There are some areas of the parks where helicopters are not permitted to land, except in emergencies or for search and rescue purposes.

The only fixed wing airstrip located on lands managed by the Department (Ruahine Corner airstrip) will be managed in accordance with the Ruahine Forest Park Conservation Management Plan.

OBJECTIVES

- i To allow use of aircraft for management purposes.**
- ii To allow aircraft access to specified areas managed by the Department where this does not compromise natural or historic values or the use and enjoyment of the area by other visitors.**

(continues)

OBJECTIVES

- iii **To ensure that any person landing aircraft on areas managed by the Department has a permit for this activity and is complying with its provisions.**

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Aerial access to designated locations in the two forest parks will be allowed, as provided for in the Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks Conservation Management Plans.
- ii The Department may maintain helicopter-free areas in the two forest parks as long as an acceptable level of wild animal control is being achieved without use of helicopters.
- iii The Department will carefully monitor aircraft use in areas managed by it to ensure that permit provisions are being met, and natural and historic values protected.

3.8.2.3 Off Road Vehicles (this refers to motorised vehicles and mountain bikes).

Many owners of motor bikes⁵⁶, four-wheel drive vehicles and mountain bikes request access to lands managed by the Department. Requests for access by mountain bikes have increased significantly in recent years and there is some non-approved use at present.

Motorised vehicles, in particular, can cause considerable damage to tracks and vegetation, and their use can cause conflict with other users. The Department will provide for appropriate vehicle use on lands managed by it where this use will not compromise natural or historic values. In this Conservancy this limits their use primarily to formed roads, and to some riverbeds in Ruahine Forest Park.

OBJECTIVE

To provide for vehicle use in appropriate areas, only where their use will not compromise natural and historic values or the enjoyment of the area for other users.

⁵⁶ *Motor bikes include three and four wheel farm bikes.*

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Motor vehicles will be confined to formed roads and parking areas, unless otherwise authorised.
- ii Mountain bikes will generally be confined to roads and formed tracks which have been designated for their use⁵⁷. They may be allowed in other localised areas, at the discretion of the Regional Conservator.
- iii Areas designated for vehicle use, and any controls on their use, will be well publicised, in any relevant pamphlets produced by the Department, on roadend information boards and at appropriate track-ends.
- iv The Department will closely monitor vehicle use on lands managed by it. If natural or historic values are threatened their use will be further restricted. This will be at the discretion of the Regional Conservator.
- v The Department through its input into district plans, will advocate controls on use of motorised vehicles along sensitive coastal areas, and in other areas of high natural or historic value.

3.8.2.4 Domestic Animals

- Dogs

There is an equivocal relationship between dogs and conservation that must be managed by the Department. Trained dogs can play a major role in the location of flightless protected bird species, animal pest control and public safety. Uncontrolled dogs may kill or wound wildlife, and disturb breeding birds or other animals. Companion dogs can enhance the recreation experience of those visiting lands managed by the Department - as walking companions or as aids to recreational hunting, but dogs may spoil the recreation experience of other visitors by creating excessive noise, defecating, or frightening people.

The Conservation Act 1987 (section 6) requires that primacy be given at all times to protection of natural values otherwise at risk because of dogs. Also the use of dogs for conservation work, hunting and as recreational companions can be regulated to ensure proper control is always maintained.

A draft policy on the use of dogs on land managed by the Department has been prepared (November 1993). It states the purpose of the policy and the implementation provisions to be established nationwide to regulate the use of dogs so that natural, historic and public use values are protected.

In Hawke's Bay Conservancy dogs are currently prohibited (except for management purposes) in a number of reserves, and regulations are being formulated to enable restrictions on their use in other areas (see Section 3.8.2.4.1).

⁵⁷ Areas where mountain bikes may be permitted within Ruahine and Kaweka Forest Parks are set out in the respective conservation management plans.

- Horses (Donkeys and Mules)

The Department receives occasional requests to take horses onto lands managed by it. Horses, donkeys and mules can spread weeds, trample vegetation and damage foot tracks and therefore their use off formed roads in areas managed by the Department will not be permitted. There are many other opportunities for horse, donkey and mule use in the region.

- Other Pets

Other pets, such as cats, are sometimes taken into areas managed by the Department, or deliberately released in these areas. These animals pose a significant threat to native wildlife and therefore they will not be permitted in any areas managed by the Department.

OBJECTIVES

- i To seek to prohibit (by regulation or bylaw) the taking of dogs⁵⁸ and horses into areas where natural or recreational values are likely to be compromised.
- ii To seek to prohibit (by regulation or bylaw) the taking of other pets (cats, etc) into areas managed by the Department.

IMPLEMENTATION

Dogs

- i The Department will identify areas managed by it where the taking of dogs may threaten native wildlife or conflict with other users and will seek to implement regulations or bylaws to prohibit them in these areas⁵⁹.
- ii Priority will be given to seeking a prohibition on dogs in areas where threatened ground birds, such as kiwi or blue duck, are present. (see also Sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5).
- iii The Department will ensure that information on the areas where dogs are not allowed, and the reasons for this prohibition are well publicised in pamphlets, on sign posts, permits and maps et
- iv In areas where dogs are allowed there will be a limit of one dog per visitor, unless specific approval is given for such activities as pig hunting.

(continues)

⁵⁸ Any restriction on dog use does not apply to seeing eye dogs, police dogs, search and rescue dogs, or dogs authorised for management purposes. ("Management purposes" may include recreational hunting, animal control, or wildlife recovery operations).

IMPLEMENTATION

- v Dogs will not be allowed inside or under huts, except for seeing-eye dogs.
- vi The Department will liaise with user groups, particularly hunting groups, to ensure that the implications of any national or conservancy policy on dog use are widely known and understood.

Horses

- i Horses, donkeys and mules will only be allowed on formed roads within areas managed by the Department.
- ii If natural or historic values are threatened by horses, donkeys and mules their use may be further restricted.

3.8.2.4.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The above objectives and implementation provisions apply across all areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy. Currently, dogs are prohibited, except for management purposes, in the lowland scenic reserves and within Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve. Regulations will be sought to enable dog use to be restricted in the two forest parks, in Waitere Kiwi Conservation Area, in Tarawera and Stoney Creek Conservation Areas, and any further areas where native wildlife are threatened by dogs. (see Sections 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5). Once the national departmental policy on dog use is finalised and this Conservancy has identified areas where dogs may not be taken, this information will be made widely available to the public.

3.8.2.5 Organised Club or Public Events

This section covers organised events which are not licensed commercial activities, but are advertised as being open to the general public. It could also include public events organised by clubs, such as triathalons and other competitive sporting events.

OBJECTIVE

To allow the use of lands managed by the Department for organised club or public events, consistent with protection of natural and historic values and the use and enjoyment of the area by other visitors, and where this could provide opportunities to promote conservation objectives to the participating public.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Applications to use lands managed by the Department for organised club or public events will be permitted, at the discretion of the Regional Conservator, if it is clear that natural and historic values will not be compromised.
- ii Where such events occur the Department will ensure that any costs associated with them are recovered. In the case of approved commercial ventures a concession fee will be charged, as with all concessions.
- iii Large-scale, commercially sponsored events may be permitted, but only where they can be shown to be consistent with protection of natural and historic values, and will not detract from use and enjoyment of the area by other visitors.
- iv Where appropriate the Department may consider involvement in an event where there are opportunities to promote conservation objectives.

3.8.2.6 Environmental Care

The New Zealand Environmental Care Code was developed by the Department and other organizations as a guideline for visitors to help protect the natural environment. It covers issues relating to plants, animals, rubbish, sewage and fire. Consideration of others and respect for our historical and cultural heritage is also promoted.

Issues

- Rubbish

It is now a widely accepted practice for visitors to carry out their own rubbish when they visit areas managed by the Department. This is necessary to ensure that the problem of rubbish disposal is kept to a manageable level and to maintain the environment in its natural state. A carry-in and carry-out philosophy is promoted to all visitors.

- Cooking Fuels

Most huts contain open fireplaces or stoves that are used for cooking and heating. In high use huts, gas, wood or coal may be supplied for cooking and heating. Where fuel is not supplied visitors generally gather dead material, but sometimes live trees are cut from around the huts. This practice is no longer acceptable, and is prohibited under both the Conservation and Reserves Acts.

- Public Education

The public is kept informed of changes through educational publicity associated with the purchase of hut tickets. Education through publicity, interpretation and staff contact is the prime means of minimising the rubbish disposal problem and of promoting other issues of self sufficiency.

OBJECTIVE

To raise visitors awareness of their impacts on natural areas and seek ways to minimise adverse effects. (see also Section 3.9)

IMPLEMENTATION

- i A carry-in and a carry-out rubbish policy will be implemented and promoted in all areas of the Conservancy.
- ii Consistent with (i), existing rubbish holes will be filled in, and rubbish bins will be removed from most roadend campsites and picnic areas. Rubbish collection facilities will only be retained in certain high-use roadend areas where collection can be carried out on a regular basis.
- iii Fireplaces may be removed, or their capacity reduced where fuel gathering is having an adverse impact on the natural values of specific areas. Visitors will be encouraged to carry their own portable cooking facilities for use in areas managed by the Department.

3.8.2.7 Visitor Health and Safety

There is an element of risk in all outdoor recreational activities. While individuals are primarily responsible for their own safety, all reasonable precautions will be taken to minimise risks to visitors.

OBJECTIVE

To endeavour to ensure that visitors to lands managed by the Department are aware of hazards and encourage them to take appropriate precautions to minimise risks.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i While recognising that individuals are primarily responsible for their own safety, all reasonable precautions will be taken to minimise risks to visitors.
- ii Visitor health and safety will be promoted by education and provision of information about potential problems or dangers.
- iii Facilities will be carefully sited and maintained to a safe standard.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iv Field staff will be trained in first aid and relevant outdoor skills.
- v The Department will continue to assist and co-operate with search and rescue authorities and other authorities having responsibilities for public health and safety.
- vi Concessionaires' licence documents will make it clear that they are to be responsible for the safety of their clients. (see also Footnote 48, page 136).
- vii Information will be available to the public on how to prevent giardia and how to stop its spread. New toilet facilities will be designed and sited so as to protect waterways.



The Department provides facilities such as huts, tracks, bridges and information signs, to enhance visitor experience, minimise visitor impacts, and for safety reasons. This bridge, located on the track to Rangiwahia Hut, in Ruahine Forest Park, provides walkers with a long view into a deeply entrenched mountain stream.

3.8.3 Facilities

(NB. This does not include roadend interpretation signs which are covered in Section 3.9).

A range of facilities are provided on lands managed by the Department (tracks, bridges, huts, camping areas etc). The two forest parks in particular have an extensive network of huts and tracks which were constructed in the 1950's and 1960's for wild animal control. These facilities are used by a wide range of visitors and there is a need to assess whether they are now appropriate in light of changing visitor demands and competing demands on funds. A hut and track rationalisation exercise has been completed as part of the Conservancy Recreation Strategy and its recommendations will be progressively implemented.

OBJECTIVE

- i To provide facilities to both enhance visitor experience and minimise visitor impact.
- ii To provide a range of facilities for different user groups in appropriate locations.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i As part of the Conservancy Recreation Strategy exercise existing recreational facilities have been reviewed and priorities for maintenance and upgrading, and for closure or removal of facilities have been established. The recommendations of this strategy will be progressively implemented and reviewed.
- ii Any future decision on removal of a hut or track will reflect not only its level of use, but also its value for public safety, animal control or for other management purposes.
- iii The needs of management will be considered in the provision or removal of any facilities.
- iv Interested parties and the general public will continue to be consulted on these issues.
- v Within the lifespan of this CMS more emphasis will be given to provision of day-use facilities close to urban areas and at roadends (as opposed to further development of facilities in back country areas) (see also Sections 2.4 and 2.5).
- vi Huts and bunks are available to all users on a "first-come, first-served" basis unless otherwise determined by the Department.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- vii Concessionaires and their clients will not be given exclusive or priority use of any facilities.
- viii The Department will encourage the participation of other agencies and user groups in planning and provision of facilities.

3.8.3.1 Implications for Specific Places in the Conservancy

The Conservancy Recreation Strategy, identifies the adequacy of current facilities and the need to rationalise facilities in some areas. At present, back country users are well served by a comprehensive network of huts and tracks in the two forest parks. There are also a number of tracks and roadend facilities in the lowland reserves.

Other areas, such as Tarawera/Stoney Creek, have no developed huts or trucks. In-keeping with the remote values of Tarawera and Stoney Creek, and their current use it is not proposed to develop more facilities in these areas (see Section 2.2). Submissions prior to development of this CMS indicated support for more facilities for day use/family use (picnicking, walking etc) close to roadends and urban areas. The Conservancy Recreation Strategy also highlights the inadequacy of land-based recreational opportunities near Napier and Hastings. The lowland reserves and coastal areas are generally suited to these uses and are within easy driving distance of the main cities and towns in Hawke's Bay/Manawatu (see Sections 2.4 and 2.5).

Section 3.9 PUBLIC AWARENESS

3.9.1 Introduction

Section 6 of the Conservation Act lists the functions of the Department. Sections 6(b)(c) and (d) enable the Department to advocate should it consider it appropriate to do so.

The Department may:

- * advocate conservation of natural and historic resources generally;
- * promote the benefits to present and future generations of the conservation of natural and historic resources (particularly in New Zealand, but including Antarctica and overseas); and
- * prepare, distribute and promote educational and promotional material relating to conservation.

A Hawke's Bay Conservancy Public Awareness Strategy has been prepared which has the following goals based on the above functions of the Department:

- * To increase understanding of and support for conservation of the natural and historic heritage of New Zealand generally and the Hawke's Bay Conservancy in particular.
- * To increase understanding and support for the work of the Department of Conservation.

A variety of public awareness programmes and resources can be used to achieve these goals. These are outlined below and further detailed in the Public Awareness Strategy.

3.9.2 Public Liaison

The maintenance and enhancement of links with key interest groups is very important. These groups include tangata whenua, environmental groups, recreation groups, landowners, other central government agencies and local authorities.

More emphasis needs to be placed on the rural landowners group, as protection of natural and historic resources on private land is a major issue in Hawke's Bay.

OBJECTIVE

To develop and maintain support for conservation and the work of the Department, through continued liaison with key interest groups; in particular, tangata whenua, local authorities, rural landowners, recreation groups and environmental groups.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Liaison will be maintained with key interest groups in Hawke's Bay through regular newsletters and meetings.
- ii Liaison will be maintained with key interest groups in Manawatu/Rangitikei by assisting Wanganui Conservancy with its production of newsletters and running of meetings in Palmerston North and other areas (eg, Taihape).
- iii Liaison with rural landowners will be sought through information-sharing at meetings, by direct liaison and by publication distribution.
- iv The Department will liaise and consult with iwi and local environmental and recreational groups on conservation matters.
- v The Department will maintain a close liaison with local authorities and will proactively seek inclusion on committees requiring a conservation perspective.

3.9.3 Education

Education has an important role in increasing understanding of and support for conservation. The Department aims to work with education providers and to increase opportunities for public education on the land it manages.

OBJECTIVE

To develop support for conservation and an understanding of the work of the Department through the provision of information to, and continuing liaison with the community.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department may prepare and maintain resource kits on conservation issues and on lands managed by the Department. Where possible it will develop these in conjunction with other departments and agencies.
- ii The Department will respond to requests for conservation-related information and may assist in developing educational programmes.
- iii A communication network with schools and community groups in the Conservancy will be developed to assist in the dissemination of information for their conservation education programmes.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iv Educational opportunities and information may be provided on lands managed by the Department and, where appropriate, for specific user groups (eg, schools at Robson Lodge).

3.9.4 Community Involvement/Volunteers

Community volunteer involvement can have many benefits, including:

- * Increasing public awareness about conservation issues;
- * Developing strong links with the community;
- * Increasing cultural awareness;
- * Providing a safe opportunity for the public to actively participate in a conservation project;
- * Extending the range of conservation achievements possible for the Department, based on existing staff levels.

OBJECTIVE

To encourage and develop active support for conservation and the work of the Department by implementing programmes and projects which volunteers can effectively and actively undertake.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will actively manage new and existing volunteers through co-ordination of a formal volunteer programme.
- ii Training will be provided to ensure that staff have the necessary supervision skills and knowledge of conservation issues to successfully run a volunteer programme.
- iii Opportunities for conservation education will be provided through conservation volunteer programmes.

3.9.5 News Media

The news media is an important vehicle for transferring to the public information promoting conservation objectives.

OBJECTIVE

To keep the public informed about current conservation issues and develop support and understanding for conservation and the work of the Department.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Strong links will be maintained with the news media through a regular supply of information on local conservation issues, and departmental campaigns and initiatives.
- ii News media requests for information regarding lands managed by the Department or conservation issues will be responded to quickly and efficiently.

3.9.6 Public Information and Publications

For many visitors the first point of call for an enquiry about conservation issues or areas managed by the Department is the local departmental office. This is probably the most important place for handling visitor enquiries and developing support for the work of the Department.

OBJECTIVE

To enhance public understanding and enjoyment of areas managed by the Department and an appreciation of natural and historic values.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Information will be provided on natural and historic resources, recreational opportunities and major conservation issues in the Conservancy through brochures, visitor centre displays and other publications, in accordance with national standards.
- ii Local recreational opportunities available in areas managed by the Department will be promoted.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iii Local visitor information centres will be provided with appropriate material to enable them to answer enquiries relating to areas managed by the Department.
- iv The Department will respond to enquiries relating to use of areas managed by it and will seek to ensure that the public is aware of their responsibilities when visiting these areas.
- v Assistance will be sought from tangata whenua in the development of brochures and displays, to ensure a bicultural perspective is present.
- vi Information relating to the Western Ruahine Ranges will be made available through the relevant Wanganui Conservancy Field Centre.

3.9.7 Visitor Programmes

Visitor programmes have been run in the Conservancy during January for several years. Future directions will see elements of these visitor programmes incorporated in the Conservancy Volunteer Programme (see Section 3.9.4).

3.9.8 Interpretation (Signs)

For many visitors their only point of contact with lands managed by the Department and conservation issues may be through an information/interpretation board at a key recreational site. This is one of the more effective means of providing information to them.

OBJECTIVE

To increase awareness of lands managed by the Department, natural and historic values generally, the work of the Department, and the responsibilities of visitors, through the provision of interpretive displays and signboards.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i A network of interpretation/information signs which identify conservation themes, recreation opportunities and the responsibilities of visitors will be established at all key recreation sites, access points and sites of high natural and historic significance.
- ii A consistent and recognisable system for interpretation/information signs will be used within the Conservancy. Where applicable these will conform to national standards.

3.9.9 Implications for Specific Areas

The objectives and implementation provisions in Section 3.9 apply across all areas managed by the Department in the Conservancy. The Conservancy's Public Awareness Strategy provides detail on priorities areas for interpretation/information signs, brochures etc.

Section 3.10 LIAISON AND PLANNING MATTERS

3.10.1 Management Planning

Prior to 1990 separate management plans were required for all reserves and forest parks in the Conservancy, although some reserves did not have approved management plans.

Amendments to the Conservation Act 1987, through the Conservation Law Reform Act 1990, changed the requirements for management plans and established CMS's to serve as the primary planning document for all areas managed by the Department and all its functions. Separate Conservation Management Plans (CMP's) may still be necessary, however, for some areas in the Conservancy.

Besides the CMS, there are other types of non-statutory documents such as functional or operational plans which may be prepared in the Conservancy. These plans give a greater level of detail and specificity than is provided for in this CMS.

OBJECTIVE

To ensure integrated management of all areas of the Conservancy and integrated management between Conservancies, and, in accordance with statutory provisions, to provide for public involvement in management planning.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will continue to collect and update resource information and other planning data relevant to management of natural and historic resources in the Conservancy.
- ii The CMS will be the basic planning document for the Conservancy. Any existing CMP's and any subsequent CMP's must conform to the objectives and implementation provisions contained in the CMS.
- iii The existing CMP's for reserves (see Appendix 8) remain the statutory planning documents which will be used for the management of those areas. They are, however, overridden by the CMS and should there be any policy inconsistency, it is the CMS which prevails. CMP's for reserves will be reviewed or revoked in the future as necessary.
- iv Further CMP's may need to be prepared if one or all of the following factors apply to a specific area:
 - There are special issues which cannot be covered by the CMS in sufficient detail, or cannot be resolved by consultation or other processes.
 - The area has a high profile, or has particular significance to the community, or sectors of the community.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- There are competing demands on the area.

In light of the above factors, new CMP's will be prepared for Cape Kidnappers Nature Reserve and Heipipi and Otatara Pa Historic Reserves. (see also Sections 2.4.11.1 and 2.5.11.2).

Public input will be sought during all stages of planning (for CMS and for other documents). Input from iwi, conservation and user groups, and adjoining landowners will be specifically sought.

- v CMP's will be maintained and reviewed for the Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks.
- vi Functional or operational plans may be prepared to give detailed management direction in specific areas, or for specific work programmes.

3.10.2 Consultation

The Conservation Act requires the Department to inform and/or consult with the public when preparing policies and plans (eg CMS's, CMP's) and in other instances, such as disposal of land.

In addition to these statutory requirements the Department consults with many groups and individuals on a range of issues. This public involvement in the work of the Department is both necessary and desirable. Liaison with local authorities, on an ongoing basis and particularly during development of new policies and plans under the Resource Management Act, is essential to ensure that natural or historic values are fully considered by them.

Section 4 of the Conservation Act gives the Department the responsibility to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. This may entail consultation. Consultation with tangata whenua is specifically provided for in Section 3.10.2.1 (below).

OBJECTIVES

- i To continue to consult with and have regard for the views of the community in all aspects of the Department's work, in accordance with statutory requirements.
- ii To maintain liaison and productive working relationships with local authorities to ensure that natural and historic values are fully considered during statutory processes.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i Knowledge and information will be shared with the community unless limited by the Official Information Act and the Privacy Act.
- ii Information will be provided by newsletters, public meetings and regular liaison with groups and individuals. (see also Section 3.9).
- iii Input will be specifically sought from key groups and individuals in the development of policies, plans and brochures. (see also Section 3.9).
- iv The Rangitikei/Hawke's Bay Conservation Board will continue to act as an important link between the Department and the public in regard to consultation and sharing of information (see Section 3.10.3).

3.10.2.1 Consultation with Tangata Whenua

The Hawke's Bay Conservancy has within its boundaries parts of the rohe of a number of tangata whenua groups. The tribes that exercise mana whenua, mana moana and mana awa within the Conservancy include Ngati Kahungunu, Ngati Apa, Rangitane o Manawatu, Rangitane o Tamaki nui a Rua, Tuwharetoa and Ngati Hineuru and their associated hapu.

Tangata whenua have a spiritual relationship with the land and possess a fund of knowledge on natural and historic resources of the area. Close consultation and mutual information sharing between iwi (including the various structures within iwi - eg. Runanganui, District Maori Council, Maori Womens Welfare League) and the Department can only be of benefit to both parties and to conservation in general.

Section 4 of the Conservation Act gives the Department the responsibility to consult with and be responsive to the views of Maori in carrying out its functions. This applies to all aspects of the Department's work.

OBJECTIVE

To consult with, and be responsive to, the views of tangata whenua on all aspects of the Department's work.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i The Department will continue to work with iwi to develop a bicultural conservation ethic⁵⁹.
- ii Through the Kaupapa Atawhai manager, a tangata whenua network for consultation will be established and maintained. This will include an up-to-date register of all iwi groups, office holders and addresses, and will be available to all staff.
- iii Staff will be given ongoing bicultural awareness training, as outlined in the Conservancy's annual training plan, to enable them to consult more effectively with tangata whenua, and be responsive to their needs and concerns.
- iv Consultation with tangata whenua will be undertaken primarily by the staff person responsible for the area or issue of concern.
- v The Department will endeavour to meet iwi in their area and at times that are most convenient to them.
- vi Verbal submissions will be given equal weight to written submissions on any planning matters. It will not be presumed that silence or a lack of iwi response necessarily indicates approval.
- vii Staff will continue to seek guidance, where necessary, from members of the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board representing the interests of tangata whenua, and will involve them in issues of concern to tangata whenua.
- viii The Department will actively seek the views of tangata whenua on management plans, functional plans, any reviews of this CMS, and on any other planning matters as appropriate.
- xi The Cultural Materials Committee will be maintained to provide advice on the taking of traditional materials from land managed by the Department (see Section 3.6.4).
- xii Where appropriate, where Conservancy boundaries do not reflect Iwi boundaries, the Department will endeavour to achieve co-ordination between conservancies to ensure that generic matters of concern for iwi are effectively and efficiently considered.

⁵⁹ *The Department must operate according to legislation and Government policy. However this implementation provision could result in policy advice from this Conservancy to Head Office that recommends changes to legislation or policy.*

3.10.3 Servicing of the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board

The members of the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board are appointed by the Minister of Conservation. Each person is appointed for a three year term and may be reappointed for further terms.

The Board district encompasses some 1,807,250 hectares. It includes the Hawke's Bay Conservancy and the Rangitikei area of the Wanganui Conservancy.

The statutory functions and powers of the Board are detailed in Section 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987 (see Appendix 9).

In summary, the Board helps formulate policy by its input into management planning, and it has an ongoing advisory and monitoring role. It also provides an important link between the Department and the public, and can act as an advocate for conservation on private lands.

The Hawke's Bay and Wanganui Conservancies service the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board, and the Department is represented at meetings by Regional Conservators from both Conservancies.



Members of the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board discussing the problem of hydrilla in Lake Opouahi, during a field inspection.

OBJECTIVE

To ensure an effective and efficient service is provided for the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board so it may discharge its statutory and other responsibilities in a satisfactory manner.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i All relevant information on conservation issues will be forwarded to Board members for their consideration.
- ii The Board will be consulted on all relevant conservation issues.
- iii Every endeavour will be made to provide opportunities to familiarise the Board with areas managed by the Department, through inspections and field trips.
- iv In association with the Board, the Department's performance in servicing the Board will be regularly reviewed.

3.10.4 Liaison with Fish and Game Councils

The Conservation Act 1987 (Section 26A) sets out the functions of the Minister in relation to Fish and Game Councils.

Fish and Game Councils have replaced the former Acclimatisation Societies. The main function of the Councils, as set out in Section 26Q(1) of the Conservation Act, is to "manage, maintain, and enhance the sports fish and game resource in the recreational interests of anglers and hunters" and in particular to:

- (i) Assess and monitor sports fish and game populations, recreational use and the condition of habitats;
- (ii) Maintain and improve the sports fish and game resource;
- (iii) Promote sports fish and game recreation and educate anglers and hunters on ethics and other matters;
- (iv) Assess costs, develop appropriate licence fees, and issue hunting and fishing licences;
- (v) To advocate the interests of anglers and hunters in the statutory planning process, formulate annual operational work plans, prepare draft fish and game management plans, identify research requirements, implement national policy, and liaise with local Conservation Boards.

The Act also provides for the Director-General or his nominee to attend and speak at all meetings of Fish and Game Councils, but that person does not have any voting rights.

The Hawke's Bay Conservancy encompasses parts of two Regional Fish and Game Council areas. The Hawke's Bay Fish and Game Region lies predominantly within the Conservancy, while only a small portion of the Wellington Fish and Game Region is included. Monthly meetings of the Hawke's Bay Fish and Game Council are attended by a member of the Conservancy staff and Council minutes are exchanged with the Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board.

The Conservation Act states that nothing in any fish and game management plan should derogate from a CMS.

OBJECTIVE

To maintain links with the Hawke's Bay and Wellington Fish and Game Councils and support where possible their efforts to enhance the Conservancy's sports fish and game resources, provided natural values are not in any way compromised.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i A Departmental representative will regularly attend the Hawke's Bay Fish and Game Councils meetings. Liaison will be maintained with the Wellington Fish and Game Council via staff in Wellington and Wanganui Conservancies.
- ii The Councils efforts to preserve and enhance wetland and riparian habitats will be supported by the Department.
- iii The Councils efforts to retain streams and rivers in their natural state and maintain high water quality standards will be supported by the Department.
- iv Provided there is no risk to native fauna or flora values and provided it is in accordance with the CMS and any operative management plans for specific areas, the Councils efforts to maintain or increase recreational fishing and hunting opportunities within the Conservancy will be supported.
- v The Department will ensure that any relevant Fish and Game Management Plan does not conflict with the CMS or any conservation management plans for specific areas.

3.10.5 Liaison with the New Zealand Historic Places Trust

The Department works in close association with the Hawke's Bay and Tararua Branch Committees of the NZ Historic Places Trust, and provides a servicing role in relation to Section 11 of the Historic Places Act 1993 (see also Section 3.2.3).

OBJECTIVE

To work in conjunction with the NZ Historic Places Trust on a local as well as a national level in order to promote an understanding of historic resources, and work towards the identification, retention and protection of historic resources on and off areas managed by the Department.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i A Departmental representative will attend the meetings of the Hawke's Bay and Tararua Branch Committees of the NZ Historic Places Trust.
- ii The Department will work with the branch committees of the NZ Historic Places Trust to promote and encourage the retention and protection of historic resources on private lands.
- iii The Department will consult with and consider advice from the NZ Historic Places Trust on the management of historic resources on lands managed by the Department.
- iv The Department will assist with the preparation and distribution of public awareness information on historic resources on lands managed by it.

Section 3.11 COMPLIANCE AND LAW ENFORCEMENT

Compliance and law enforcement has a place in almost all activities of the Department.

The principle activities in the Conservancy include:

- Protected wildlife enforcement (see Section 3.5).
- Protected areas enforcement.
eg. destruction of vegetation, illegal grazing (see Section 3.4).
- CITES (see Section 3.5.6).
- Wild animal control enforcement (see Section 3.4.4).
- Wildlife permitting.
eg. parakeet and lizard permits (see Section 3.5.6).
- Enforcement of conditions of concessions, leases, licences and permit conditions (see Section 3.6).
- Fire control and permitting (see Section 3.4.3).
- Staff training - regular training for departmental staff and Honorary Warranted Officers.
- Public education - use of media and provision of signs, brochures, etc, to promote public awareness and a higher level of compliance (see Section 3.9).

OBJECTIVE

To endeavour to ensure that the public are aware of and comply with the legislation, bylaws and regulations of the Department, in order to protect natural and historic resources.

IMPLEMENTATION

- i All warranted officers will be given training appropriate to their warrants.
- ii The Honorary Warranted Officer system (formerly referred to as Honorary Rangers) will be continued and encouraged. Recruitment will be sought and training will be provided as resources allow.
- iii All reported or detected offences will be investigated, and where appropriate prosecutions will be made.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iv The public will be informed of legislation, regulations, bylaws and their responsibilities, by the use of signs, brochures, newspaper advertisements and by publicity campaigns where this is necessary/appropriate.
- v Where appropriate warrants for staff will be sought under the Resource Management Act.

Section 3.12 EFFICIENT USE OF RESOURCES IN THE WORKPLACE

One of the Department's functions is to advocate the conservation of natural and historic resources generally (section 6(b) of the Act).

This does not apply just to natural resources, such as forests or wetlands, or to historic resources, but also to human use of resources, such as energy and paper products.

While encouraging others to conserve resources it is essential that within its offices and in the field, the Department uses resources efficiently.

Within this Conservancy a number of projects have been initiated to do this, including an energy audit of the Conservancy office, an investigation of the most energy-efficient vehicle fleet, (which has resulted in all the fleet running on either lead-free petrol or diesel) and a review of the quantity of paper products used in the office (which has resulted in a number of initiatives to reduce paper use).

Further commitment to efficient use of resources in the course of conservation work is necessary.

OBJECTIVE

To ensure that in carrying out its functions the Department is using resources efficiently and is reducing the quantity of non-renewable resources it uses wherever possible.

IMPLEMENTATION

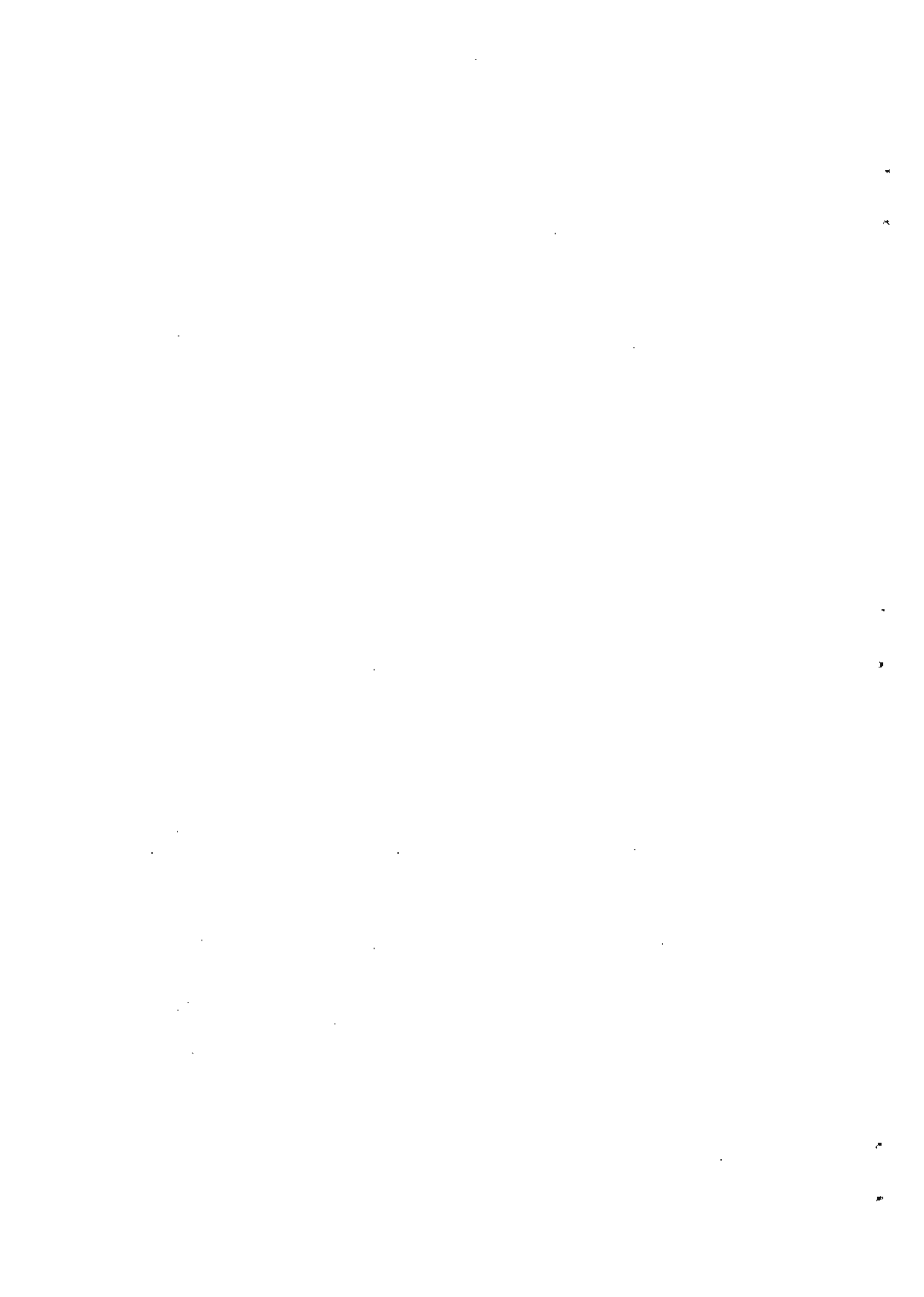
- i In the Conservancy Office and at Field Centres efforts will continue in reducing the amount of paper used and in recycling paper products.
- ii Other materials will be recycled wherever possible.
- iii Energy resources will be used as efficiently as possible.

(continues)

IMPLEMENTATION

- iv The energy efficiency of the vehicle fleet will be monitored and changes made to the type of vehicle and use of vehicles if necessary.
- v The Department will co-operate with other groups and organizations in promoting efficient use of resources, and in practical ways of achieving this in local communities.

Section Four
(Strategic Directions)



SECTION 4 - STRATEGIC DIRECTIONS

4.1 INTRODUCTION

This Conservation Management Strategy has, in earlier sections, outlined objectives for conservation for various geographic places, and for a range of functions for which the Department has responsibility.

These objectives have been determined by a number of factors including legislative requirements, departmental policy and priorities, and regional priorities. These are based primarily on natural or historic values and the threats to them, the practicality of management intervention, and very importantly, the views and aspirations of local communities as expressed during the CMS development process.

There are numerous conservation challenges covered by this CMS, and the Department is unable to tackle them all. Priority setting is essential to ensure that the most important places are protected and the most important functions given greatest resourcing.

This section sums up the messages which have come out of the strategic analysis of both places and functions. It aims to set the scene for the next ten years, while recognising that strategic planning for long-term conservation "visions" is a process spanning many decades, not just the next one.

Also, it must be appreciated that the CMS cannot finalise a detailed "work programme" for the next ten years. That is not its function. Annual business plans are where that process occurs. Preparation of that annual business plan takes account of a range of factors, including Government policy, the Department's corporate plan, this CMS, and financial allocation levels.

4.2 PLACES

Each of the six geographic "places" discussed in Section Two, has a distinct character. Each has a different mix of natural and historic values, and a different set of threats to them. The conservation management priorities for each place vary greatly as a result.

There is, however, one factor which is consistent throughout all places except for the mountainlands; that the Conservancy has a paucity of protected areas, and lack of good representation of ecological diversity.

In the mountainlands the two forest parks dominate, and these are of great importance for their natural habitat values, water and soil conservation values and as a destination for people of the region seeking a natural experience in what is otherwise a highly modified part of New Zealand. In the past, many of New Zealand's mountainlands were inadequately managed, and as a result some very important natural values have been diminished or lost. A clear outcome of this strategic planning exercise has been the growth in awareness that the mountainlands in this Conservancy demand active and careful management to protect their important natural values. Of particular importance is animal and plant pest control.

The Tarawera area is a distinct, although often overlooked, part of the Conservancy. The area is particularly important because of the composition of its forests, but vulnerable due to increasing fragmentation of its forested areas through land use changes on private lands. It contains two large and important conservation areas (Stoney Creek and Tarawera).

Maungaharuru has been identified as a special part of the Conservancy, containing areas with high landscape and ecological values. A range of management initiatives to protect these values, both on and off the areas managed by the Department are essential.

The lowlands (and the coast) are the most heavily modified part of the Conservancy, with no large protected areas. Protection of remaining natural areas and, where possible, restoration of degraded areas, are clearly major priorities for conservation.

The coast of Hawke's Bay bears little resemblance to its earlier natural state, with virtually no protected areas. This CMS has identified any native vegetation remnants, wetlands or any sand-dune areas as worthy of priority for protection. The few islands and rock stacks are of high natural value.

The marine area is, in many respects "the great unknown" from a conservation viewpoint. Only limited inter-tidal and subtidal research has been undertaken, but a number of areas with high natural values have been identified (see Appendix 4). Further research is required in this area.

In analysing each of the six "places" examined in this draft CMS, it is impossible, and inappropriate to say "this is the order of priority of the six places". Each is important in its own way, each has its own assemblage of conservation treasures, and each a multitude of threats, both current and potential. Together, the areas managed by the Department throughout the Conservancy represent much of what is left of the "natural" Hawke's Bay.

4.3 FUNCTIONS

The functions carried out by the Department, and analysed in Section Three of this CMS, are derived from the legislation the Department administers and from the specific outputs the government wishes to purchase from the Department, as expressed through the corporate plan. While all functions must be carried out, the relative level of resourcing and activity in this Conservancy will be strongly influenced by the priorities emanating from this CMS.

Consultation prior to and during the development of this CMS, provided the Department with some clear messages from the community. The strongest and most consistent messages were that priority should be given to maintenance and enhancement of existing protected areas and to the programme of completing a representative protected natural areas network. The consequence of this is that activity in some other areas such as recreational development may have to be reduced, to free up resources.

The strategic planning and analysis process has confirmed these public views. In general terms the priority functions for areas managed by the Department for the next ten years are the protection elements of fire, animal pests and weed control, and domestic stock exclusion.

Equal with that is the clear need to extend the protected natural areas system through implementation of the PNAP and protection of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems and habitats on private land through the statutory advocacy process.

The CMS process has also highlighted the opportunity for greater community involvement in conservation management programmes.

4.4 PLACES AND FUNCTIONS - THE SYNTHESIS

All of the six "places" must be managed, and all of the Department's functions must be carried out. However, the relative level of management of various functions in the six places will be subject to guidance from this strategy.

The functional analysis (Section Three) has a wide range of sub-sections, but they can be reduced to five generic groupings for the purpose of this synthesis.

(i) Advocacy and Unprotected Areas

This group of functions is important in areas where many important natural and historic values are unprotected, and efforts are required either through the statutory planning process, or through direct negotiation, to secure protection.

(ii) Protection of areas managed by the Department

This includes fire prevention and suppression, animal and plant pest control, and the exclusion of domestic stock.

(iii) Protected Species

Building on (ii), this focuses on individual species under threat, and covers the Department's responsibility for protected native wildlife throughout the Conservancy, irrespective of land ownership.

(iv) Recreational use

This includes recreational and commercial tourism use of areas managed by the Department.

(v) Public involvement and support

This includes the work involved in improving public understanding and gaining public support for conservation, and in encouraging and facilitating public involvement.

In order to determine relative conservation priorities for the future, the five generic groupings listed above must be related to the six places in the Conservancy which have been discussed in Section Two. While it is not possible to provide specific listings of conservation priorities, clear directions for management have emerged, both through the public consultation process and through the development of this CMS. The functional responsibilities for management have thus been accorded priorities in Table 1 (page 188) as follows:

- 4 = very high priority
- 3 = high priority
- 2 = moderate priority
- 1 = lower priority

This table shows relative priorities between places for the five generic functional groupings.

It is important to note that a ranking of 1 or 2 does not imply that a function is unimportant in a particular place. It merely recognises that, given resource constraints, the priority for that particular function is greater elsewhere. For example, in the mountainlands several unprotected areas of high natural value have been identified (see Section 2.1.9) and therefore the Department's advocacy role in achieving protection for these areas is very important. However, in the following Table advocacy is given a ranking of (2). This recognises that, in comparison with other places in the Conservancy, particularly the lowland and coastal areas, the overall need for additional protected areas is less in the mountainlands. The importance of the unprotected areas in the mountainlands is undiminished, and every endeavour will be made to protect the best of them, as resources allow.

Table 1 Relative Priorities for Functional Responsibilities Across the Six Places in the Conservancy

	Mountainlands	Tarawera	Maungaharuru	Lowlands	Coastal	Marine
Advocacy and unprotected areas	2	3	4	4	4	4
Protection of areas managed by the Department	4	3	4	4	4	N/A ⁺
Protected Species	3	3	3	2	2	2
Recreational use	3	1	1	2	1*	N/A ⁺
Public support and involvement	3	2	3	4	4	4

4 = Very high priority 3 = High priority 2 = Moderate priority 1 = Lower priority

Key points emerging from Table 1:

- In all areas of the Conservancy there are some high or very high priority functions to be carried out.
- All of the functional groupings are of high or very high priority somewhere.
- Protection of natural and historic values in areas managed by the Department is important irrespective of where they occur.
- Advocacy emerges as one of the most important functional areas in this Conservancy; a reflection of the modified nature of much of the area. However, advocacy and legal protection initiatives are of greatest importance in the lowlands, coastal and marine areas, because of the lack of protected areas and the pressures on them from human developments.

* This does not imply that provision of recreational opportunities and facilities is of low priority on the coast. The coast is a high-use area, but there are few areas managed by the Department along it. Therefore other agencies have important roles in this area.

⁺ Not applicable. This is because there are currently no areas managed by the Department in the marine area.

- In the marine area there are as yet no protected areas. In this area the Department's advocacy role and its statutory responsibilities for coastal management, as defined by the Resource Management Act 1991, will be very important in order to achieve conservation gains.
- Public support and involvement opportunities are greatest in the areas closest to the larger population centres, but this support and involvement is necessary in all areas to achieve conservation objectives.
- Overall, the relative priority for investment in recreation is lower than for other functional areas.

4.5 CONCLUSIONS

While some will expect a very tight and specific listing of conservation priorities for the future, that is not what this CMS has produced. What it has done is provide clear guidance on strategic directions for the future. Conservation management in this Conservancy for the next ten years (and beyond) should concentrate on protecting existing areas managed by the Department from threats, such as plant and animal pests, and also on identifying and securing protection of areas with important natural and historic values elsewhere. This direction was widely supported by the people of the Conservancy, as expressed at public meetings, in submissions prior to development of the CMS and later in submissions on the draft CMS.

The guidance provided by this CMS will be encompassed in the Conservancy's annual business planning and budgeting exercise, and the consequent detailed day-to-day work programming by staff. It may, in addition, inspire people outside the Department to take conservation initiatives in their local areas. This co-operation and involvement of local people in conservation will be essential if the Department is to meet the challenges posed by this CMS.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Many groups and individuals have contributed to the development of this CMS:

- The people of Hawke's Bay, Manawatu and Rangitikei who helped organise and who attended CMS meetings and hui, who shared their views and expertise prior to the development of this document in its earlier draft form, and later presented valuable submissions enabling considerable improvements to be made.
- The Rangitikei-Hawke's Bay Conservation Board.
- Bronwyn Hunt of the Department of Conservation's Hawke's Bay Conservancy office, for co-ordinating the preparation of this CMS document.
- Staff of the Hawke's Bay Conservancy, and especially the staff of the field centres.
- Jeanette Fifield and Ellen Derryman for typing this document.
- The draughting section of the Department in Wanganui.

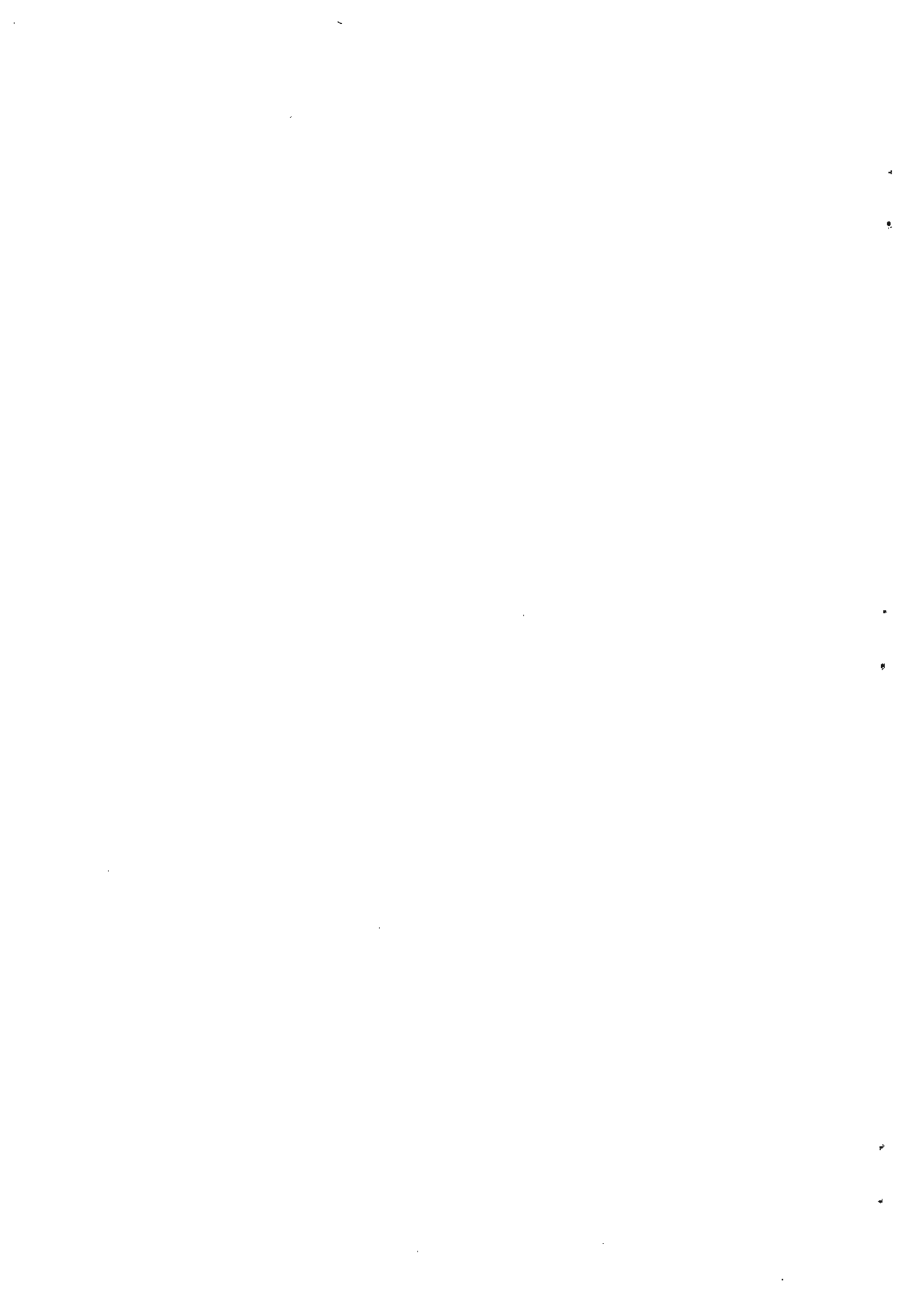
BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Bell, Brian D 1986 The Conservation Status of New Zealand Wildlife. NZ Wildlife Service, Wellington.
2. Department of Conservation 1987 Aorangi - Awarua Resource Report. Department of Conservation (unpublished)
3. Department of Conservation 1987 Ecological Regions and Districts of New Zealand. Sheet 2 (Editor, W Mary McEwen).
4. Department of Conservation 1990 Coastal Resources Inventory, First Order Survey, Hawke's Bay Conservancy
5. Department of Conservation 1990 The Ecology of Waihua. A Lowland Ecological District of Northern Hawke's Bay. (PNA Stage One Survey). Hawke's Bay Conservancy Office, April 1990.
6. Department of Conservation 1991 Kaimanawa Ecological Region Protected Natural Areas Programme Reconnaissance Survey. Hawke's Bay and Tongariro/Taupo Conservancies, June 1991.
7. Department of Conservation 1991 Kaweka Forest Park Conservation Management Plan. Department of Conservation, Napier.
8. Department of Conservation 1991 The Pahiataua Ecological Region. Protected Natural Areas Programme Reconnaissance Survey. Hawke's Bay and Wellington Conservancies, May 1991.
9. Department of Conservation 1991 Protected Natural Areas Survey of the Ruahine Lowlands. Department of Conservation, Hawke's Bay, August 1991.
10. Department of Conservation 1992 Pahiataua Ecological Region, Protected Natural Areas Survey. Compiled by Dr J F Findlay, under contract for the Hawke's Bay Conservancy.

- | | | | |
|-----|----------------------------|------|--|
| 11. | Department of Conservation | 1992 | <u>Ruahine Forest Park Conservation Management Plan.</u> Department of Conservation, Napier. |
| 12. | Department of Conservation | 1992 | <u>Setting Priorities for the Conservation of New Zealand's Threatened Plants and Animals.</u> |
| 13. | Department of Conservation | 1993 | <u>Historic Resources Strategy, Hawke's Bay Conservancy</u> (unpublished) |
| 14. | Department of Conservation | 1993 | <u>Draft Concessions Policy, The Policy of the NZ Conservation Authority and the Minister of Conservation on Concessions for Recreation and Tourism Business Operations in Reserves and Conservation Areas.</u> Department of Conservation, Wellington, June 1993. |
| 15. | Department of Conservation | 1993 | <u>Eastern Hawke's Bay Ecological District Survey Report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme.</u> (Prepared by Felicity Maxwell, John Adams and Geoff Walls, Department of Conservation, Napier). |
| 16. | Department of Conservation | 1994 | <u>Heretaunga Ecological District Survey Report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme.</u> (Prepared by Alan Lee, Department of Conservation, Napier). |
| 17. | Department of Conservation | 1994 | <u>Hawke's Bay Conservation Recreation Strategy.</u> (P Sheridan, Department of Conservation, Napier) - Unpublished. |
| 18. | DSIR | 1988 | <u>The Lowlands of Hawke's Bay. Protected Natural Areas Stage One Survey of Three Ecological Districts - Maungaharuru, Heretaunga and Eastern Hawke's Bay.</u> (Compiled by G Walls and Marie Fromont for the Department of Conservation, Napier). |
| 19. | Geological Society of NZ | 1993 | <u>Inventory of Important Geological Sites and Landforms in the East Coast and Hawke's Bay Region.</u> Edited by Jill A Kenny and Bruce W Hayward. 1st edition. Geological Society of NZ, Miscellaneous Publication No. 71. |

- | | | | |
|-----|---|------|---|
| 20. | Hawke's Bay Regional Council, Hastings District Council, City of Napier, Department of Conservation | 1992 | <u>Ahuriri Estuary Management Plan</u> , September 1992. |
| 21. | Keating, Michael | 1993 | <u>The Earth Summit's Agenda for Change</u> . A Plain Language Version of Agenda 21 and other Rio Agreements. Centre for our Common Future, Geneva, April 1993. |
| 22. | Ministry of Works | 1971 | <u>National Resources Survey Park VI, Hawke's Bay Region</u> , Compiled by the Town and Country Planning Division, MOW, Wellington, 1971 |
| 23. | Nature Conservation Council | 1981 | <u>The Red Data Book of New Zealand</u> . Rare and endangered species of endemic terrestrial vertebrates and vascular plants. |
| 24. | NZ Historic Places Trust | 1984 | <u>Historic Place Inventory</u> . Hawke's Bay County. |
| 25. | NZ Historic Places Trust | 1985 | <u>Historic Places Inventory</u> . Dannevirke, Masterton, Pahiatua and Woodville Boroughs. |
| 26. | Parrish, G R | 1988 | <u>Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat of Hawke's Bay Rivers</u> , Science and Research Directorate, Department of Conservation, Wellington. |
| 27. | Rogers, G M | 1993 | <u>Moawhango Ecological Region Survey Report for the Protected Natural Areas Programme</u> . Department of Conservation, Wanganui. |
| 28. | The 24 Reserves Management Plans listed in Appendix 8, Volume II of this document. | | |

**Section Five
(Appendices)**



SECTION FIVE - APPENDICES

- APPENDIX 1 Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.
- APPENDIX 2 Setting Priorities for the Conservation of New Zealand's Threatened Plants and Animals.
- APPENDIX 3 Criteria for Ranking Sites of Special Wildlife Interest.
- APPENDIX 4 Areas with Important Natural and Historic Values in Hawke's Bay Conservancy's Coastal Environment.
- APPENDIX 5 Resource Management Act 1991 - Purposes and Principles.
- APPENDIX 6 Criteria Used by the Department for Identifying Areas of Significant Conservation Value in the Coastal Marine Area.
- APPENDIX 7 Applications from Iwi to Gather Materials from Areas Managed by the Department or to Take Protected Species for Cultural Purposes - Procedure to be followed.
- APPENDIX 8 Current Management Plans in Hawke's Bay Conservancy.
- APPENDIX 9 Statutory Functions of Conservation Boards.
- APPENDIX 10 Hawke's Bay Conservancy Register of Actively Managed Historic Places.
- APPENDIX 11 Standard Track Classification.
- APPENDIX 12 Localities Map.
- APPENDIX 13 Natural Criteria Used to Determine Priority Recommended Areas for Protection (RAP'S).
- APPENDIX 14 Areas Managed by the Department within Hawke's Bay Conservancy where Generally Permission will not be given for the Taking of Indigenous Fish (including Eels) for Commercial Purposes.
- APPENDIX 15 Areas not managed by the Department within Hawke's Bay Conservancy where Restrictions or Controls are Recommended for Commercial Taking of Indigenous Fish (including Eels).
- APPENDIX 16 Convention on Biological Diversity.
- APPENDIX 17 Resource Management Act 1991 - Section 4.
- APPENDIX 18 List of Wildlife Mentioned in the Text.
- APPENDIX 19 List of Plant Names Mentioned in the Text.

**SUMMARIES OF THE PRINCIPLES OF THE TREATY
OF WAITANGI**

Waitangi Tribunal

Court of Appeal

The Essential Bargain

The exchange of the right to make laws for the obligation to protect Maori interests.

The acquisition of sovereignty in exchange for the protection of rangatiratanga.

Partnership

The Treaty implies a partnership exercised with utmost good faith.

The Treaty requires a partnership and the duty to act reasonably and in good faith (the responsibilities of the parties being analogous to fiduciary duties)

Treaty is an agreement that can be adapted to meet new circumstances.

The freedom of the Crown to govern for the whole community without unreasonable restriction.

The needs of both Maori and the wider community must be met, which will require compromises on both sides.

The courtesy of early consultation.

Maori duty of loyalty to the Queen, full acceptance of her Government through her responsible Ministers, and reasonable Cooperation.

The principle of choice: Maori, Pakeha, and bicultural options.

Active Protection

The Maori interest should be actively protected by the Crown.

The duty of the Crown is not merely passive but extends to active protection of the Maori people in the use of their lands, and other guaranteed taonga to the fullest extent practicable.

The granting of the right of pre-emption to the crown implies a reciprocal duty for the crown to ensure that the tangata whenua retain sufficient endowment for their foreseen needs.

The obligation to grant at least some form of redress for grievances where these are established.

The crown cannot evade its obligations under the Treaty by conferring its authority on some other body.

The 'taonga' to be protected includes all valued resources and intangible assets.

Tribal Rangatiratanga

The crown obligation to legally recognise tribal rangatiratanga.

Maori to retain chieftainship (rangatiratanga) over resources and taonga and to have all the rights and privileges of citizenship.

Tino rangatiratanga' includes management of resources and other taonga according to Maori cultural preferences.

Principles of the Treaty of Waitangi¹

PRINCIPLE 1

The Principle of Government
The Kawanatanga Principle
The Government has the right to govern and to make laws.

PRINCIPLE 2

The Principle of Self Management
The Rangatiratanga Principle
The iwi have the right to organise as iwi and, under the law, to control the resources they own.

PRINCIPLE 3

The Principle of Equality
All New Zealanders are equal under the law.

PRINCIPLE 4

The Principle of Reasonable Cooperation
Both the Government and the iwi are obliged to accord each other reasonable cooperation on major issues of common concern.

PRINCIPLE 5

The Principle of Redress
The Government is responsible for providing effective processes for the resolution of grievances in the expectation that reconciliation can occur.

¹ These interpretations of the principles have been prepared by Government, for the benefit of Government Departments and other agencies. They outline the principles for Crown action on Treaty of Waitangi issues, by which the Department of Conservation is bound.

**SETTING PRIORITIES FOR THE CONSERVATION OF
NEW ZEALAND'S THREATENED¹ PLANTS AND ANIMALS**

PRIORITY SPECIES - HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY

1) Category A (Highest priority species for Conservation Action)

Plants *Pterostylis micromega*
Clianthus puniceus (*kakabeak*)

Animals Nil

2) Category B (Second priority species for Conservation Action)

Plants *Pittosporum obcordatum* (heart leaved kohuhu)

Birds Wrybill
North Island brown kiwi
NZ dotterel
NZ falcon
Variable oyster catcher
NZ pigeon (kereru)
Blue duck
North Island kaka
NZ dabchick
Black-fronted tern

Fish Nil

Reptiles - small scaled skink (Taihape skink)

Mammals Long tailed bat

Frogs Nil

Invertebrates Mole cricket

3) Category C (Third priority species for Conservation Action)

Plants Nil

¹ Plants and animals which fitted the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) definitions of "Endangered", "Vulnerable", and "Indeterminate" were included in this ranking exercise. Therefore "threatened" in this instance encompasses the above three categories. For full definitions of the IUCN terms, refer to the Red Data Book of New Zealand, 1981 (see Bibliography).

Birds Banded dotterel
Yellow crowned parakeet

Fish Koaro
Banded Kokopu
Blue-gilled bully

Reptiles Nil

Invertebrates *Powelliphanta marchanti*

4) Category X (Species which have not been sighted for a number of years but which may still exist)

Plants *Stellaria elatinoides*

5) Category I (Species about which little information exists, but which are considered threatened)

Plants *Myosotis petiolata ss*

Invertebrates Tadpole shrimp

6) Category O (Species which are threatened in NZ but secure in other parts of their range outside NZ)

Birds Australasian bittern
White heron
Reef heron
Caspian tern
Royal spoonbill
Crested grebe (no relevant records - vagrant only)

(Source - "Setting priorities for the conservation of NZ's threatened plants and animals".
Department of Conservation 1992)

**CRITERIA FOR RANKING SITES OF SPECIAL
WILDLIFE INTEREST**

1. Outstanding

- (a) Presence of a breeding population of a highly endangered or rare endemic species.
- (b) A population of an endemic species of very restricted distribution and which could become endangered.
- (c) Areas essential to species from (a) and (b) for purposes other than breeding.
- (d) Areas of vital importance to internationally uncommon species (breeding and/or migratory).
- (e) Areas of vital importance to internally migratory species with very limited distribution or abundance.
- (f) Largely unmodified ecosystem or example of original habitat type not represented elsewhere in the country, of large size and containing viable populations of all or almost all species which are typical of the ecosystem or habitat type.

2. High

- (a) Site containing an indigenous species which has declined significantly as a result of man's influence.
- (b) One of few or the only breeding area for a non-endemic indigenous species of limited abundance.
- (c) Habitat of an uncommon, discontinuously distributed species not adequately represented in a particular ecological region.
- (d) Example of a largely unmodified site which is not represented to the same extent elsewhere in the ecological region and is used by most species which are typical of that habitat type for the region.
- (e) Presence of a species of an endemic family which is of limited abundance throughout the country although adequately represented in one ecological region but whose habitat is at some risk.

3. Moderate-High

- (a) Presence of a species which is still quite widely distributed but whose habitat has been and still is being significantly reduced or modified as a result of man's influence.
- (b) Areas containing high numbers of breeding or moulting birds or where breeding or moulting areas are of inter-regional significance to wildlife.
- (c) A large and fairly unmodified site or ecosystem which is represented elsewhere in the ecological regional and contains all, or almost all, species typical of that habitat type for a particular region.
- (d) An area where any particular species is exceptional in terms of, say, abundance or behaviour but which is otherwise widespread.

4. Moderate

All sites supporting good numbers of species which are typical of that type of habitat within an ecological region and which have not been heavily modified by man's influence.

5. Potential

All areas of some wildlife significance whose wildlife values are limited by small size, heavy modification or other factors, but which would have increased wildlife value if left to regenerate or if managed or developed for wildlife. (May include wildlife habitat which functions as a corridor, or which is sup-optimal habitat which may be necessary for maintaining genetic diversity)."

Source "Wildlife and Wildlife Habitat of Hawke's Bay Rivers". Science and Research Series No 2, G R Parrish, Department of Conservation, 1988.

**AREAS WITH IMPORTANT NATURAL AND HISTORIC VALUES
IN THE HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY'S
COASTAL ENVIRONMENT¹**

1. Waihua River - Tangoio Reef

This site contains the Wairoa Hard. The Wairoa Hard is a large area of sediments that contain a significant proportion of gravels and pebbles extending for over 24 km along the coast from the Moeangiangi River to the Waihua River, and offshore to a depth of 35-45 m. The only other area within Hawke's Bay in which such a gravel, pebble, sand and mud mixture occurs is situated between the Tukituki River and Cape Kidnappers ("the Clive Hard").

Very little is known of the biological environment of the Wairoa Hard, however, it is used by the juveniles of a number of species of fish including snapper (*Pagrus auratus*), hammerhead shark (*Sphyrna zygaena*), bronze whaler (*Carcharhinus brachyurus*), rig (*Mustelus lenticulatus*), John Dory (*Zeus japonicus*), trevally (*Pseudocaranx dentex*), red moki (*Cheilodactylus spectabilis*), blue moki (*Latridopsis ciliaris*), hapuku (*Polyprion oxygenios*) and common warehou (*Serioloba brama*). Snapper may also spawn in the area. Other species of fish known to occur on the Hard include seven gilled shark (*Notorhynchus cepedianus*), white shark (*Carcharodon carcharias*), mako (*Isurus oxyrinchus*), thresher shark (*Alopias vulpinus*), school shark (*Galeorhinus galeus*), blue shark (*Prionace glauca*), short tailed stingray (*Dasyatis brevicaudatus*), mackerel (*Trachurus sp*), kahawai (*Arripus trutta*), kingfish (*Seriola lalandi*) and gurnard (*Chelidonichthys kumu*).

In 1981 the Wairoa Hard was closed to all forms of commercial fishing, except crayfishing. In 1986 it was also closed to recreational set netting. These Fisheries regulations were passed in recognition of the importance of the area as a fish nursery habitat, particularly snapper, and its vulnerability to trawling.

The coastline between Waikari and Tangoio is of considerable significance to the tangata whenua. Coastal pa and settlement sites were situated at Waihua, Mohaka, Waikari, Arapaoanui, Waipatiki, Punakarau (Tait's Beach), Whakaari Peninsula and Tangoio. A coastal track used by Maori, and later by European settlers, extended from Waipatiki to Waikari, and burial sites are situated between Arapaoanui and Waikari. Inshore reefs all along the coast continue to be an important source of kaimoana, particularly shellfish. Te Hata Te Kani identified twelve fishing grounds for moki, tarakihi, tamure (snapper) and hapuku in offshore waters between the Waikari River and Tangoio Reef (Guthrie-Smith, 1921).

¹ These areas have been determined by applying the criteria outlined in Appendix 6, even though they cover areas situated in the wider coastal environment, as opposed to the more defined Coastal Marine Area (below MHWS). This information has been made available to local authorities for use in preparation of policies and plans under the Resource Management Act..

Whaling stations were situated on the Whakaari Peninsula and Moeangiangi. A landing reserve exists on the Whakaari Peninsula, and a recreation reserve at Waikari was originally a landing reserve for coastal trading vessels. Along the coast Crown land administered by the Department of Conservation extends to the clifftops, except for the 10 ha Moeangiangi Block on the north bank of the Moeangiangi River which is Maori Reserve. The coastal strip includes the Matangimoemoe earthquake slip conservation area, a site listed in the New Zealand inventory of active earth deformation sites. This also contains the largest area of manuka-tauhinu scrub in the Hawke's Bay coastal lowlands, and a small karaka and titoki forest remnant.

2. Ahuriri Estuary

Despite being extensively modified as a result of the diversion of the Tutaekuri River, the 1931 Napier Earthquake and subsequent reclamations, the Estuary continues to have high natural and historic values.

The upper estuary, outfall channel and associated wetlands are important breeding and feeding areas for marsh crake (*Porzana pusilla*), grey teal (*Anas gibberifrons*), New Zealand shoveller (*Anas rhynchos*) and pied stilt (*Himantopus leucocephalus*). The tidal flats of the outfall channel and lower estuary are also important feeding areas for royal spoonbill (*Platalea regia*) and migratory waders, particularly eastern bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*) and Pacific golden plover (*Pluvialis fulva*). A Wildlife Refuge covers the Southern Marsh, Westshore Lagoon and the estuary from the low-level bridge to Pandora bridge. As well as having high ratings in the WERI and SSWI databases, the estuary is also listed in the Oceania Wetland Inventory.

Within Hawke Bay the Ahuriri Estuary is the most important estuary in terms of fisheries production. The estuary provides two important types of habitat for fish: nursery and breeding habitat, and feeding areas. Approximately eleven species breed in the estuary, nine of these are commercial species. In all twenty-nine species of fish have been recorded in the estuary. The dominant species are short-finned eels (*Anguilla australis*), yellow-bellied flounder (*Rhombosolea leporina*), sand flounder (*Rhombosolea plebia*), yellow-eyed mullet (*Aldrichetta forsteri*) and parore (*Girella tricuspidata*) (Kilner and Akroyd, 1978).

Ahuriri Estuary and the larger area that formerly represented Te Whanganui O Orotu (Ahuriri Lagoon) are of major significance to the tangata whenua and are subject to a claim presently before the Waitangi Tribunal. Te Whanganui a Orotu was a very important source of food and was heavily populated. Consequently numerous sites of cultural, historic and archaeological significance are situated around what was its shoreline (Parsons, 1992).

3. Pania Reef

The most significant sea bed feature in southern Hawke Bay is Pania Reef. It is situated approximately 800 m north of the Port of Napier breakwater, and consists of a broken linear series of banks and pinnacles extending 3.2 km in a north easterly direction. Depth of the surrounding sea floor ranges from 13 m at its southern end, to 19 m at the northern end. Pania Rock itself rises to within 1.6 m of the surface, and is situated approximately halfway along the reef.

Pania Reef is the only significant offshore reef system inside Hawke Bay west of the Mahia Peninsula. Habitats present on the reef include the low reef crest, dominated by dense beds of mussels (*Perna canaliculus*), urchin-grazed barrrens, *Ecklonia* forest, and deep reef areas dominated by sponges, hydroid trees and large colonies of jewel anemones (*Corynactis haddoni*). All sections of the reef support large populations of reef fish, and reef-associated plantivorous fish. Parore (*Girella tricuspidata*), common on the shallow reef crest, probably migrate between Ahuriri estuary and Pania reef.

Species not recorded or observed as adults south of Cape Kidnappers but common on Pania Reef include the sponge *Hymeniacidon hauraki*, the green seaweed *Caulerpa fastigiata*, hairy trumpet (*Monoplex parthenopeus*, koheru (*Decapterus koheru*), panore and porae (*Nemadactylus douglasi*). Species that appear to be significantly more abundant on Pania Reef than south of Cape Kidnappers include the clown nubibranch (*Chromodoris amoena*), goatfish (*Upeneichthys lineatus*), blue maomao (*Scorpius violaceus*), kelpfish (*Chironemus marmoratus*) and crested blenny (*Parablennius laticlavus*).

Pania Reef is of significance to the tangata whenua as both a source of kaimoana and a waahi tapu. The significance of the reef as a waahi tapu derives from the belief that it is the dwelling place of Moremore, the kaitiaki or guardian of this part of Hawke Bay.

4. Town Reef

This is a small area of shallow reef situated approximately 100 m east of the Port of Napier breakwater. This area is a traditional source of kaimoana for the tangata whenua.

5. Waitangi Estuary

The estuary is formed by the mouths of the Ngaruroro, Clive and Tutaekuri Rivers, and the smaller Muddy Creek tributary. It contains small areas of mudflat, saltmarsh, reed and succulent herb swamp. Muddy Creek supports a population of the threatened Australasian brown bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*). Banded dotterel³ (*Charadrius bicinctus*), black-fronted dotterel (*Charadrius melanops*), pied stilt (*Himantopus leucocephalus*) large numbers of white-fronted terns (*Sterna striata*) and black-billed gull (*Larus bulleri*) nest along the shingle spit separating Muddy Creek from the sea. Black-fronted tern² (*Chlidonias albostratus*) over winter in the estuary, and it is used by migratory waders. A Wildlife Refuge covers the mouths of the Tutaekuri and Ngaruroro Rivers.

6. Tukituki River Mouth - Haumoana

Three pa sites, Waipukureku, Matahiwi and Te Kauhanga, are situated near the Tukituki river mouth. The river mouth and offshore area continues to be an important source of kaimoana, particularly kahawai (*Arripus trutta*) and flatfish.

²Threatened species

The Tukituki river mouth is an important feeding area for little black shags (*Phalacrocorax sulcirostris*) and little shags (*P. melanoleucos*), and is the main roost for the threatened Caspian tern (*Hydroprogne caspia*) in Hawke Bay. Tidal flats and river banks uncovered by the tide also provide feeding areas for bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*) and black-fronted dotterel (*Charadrius melanops*).

The Haumoana lagoons, and associated wetlands and shingle beach are of significance as the holotype locality for *Tebenna bradleyi* and *Nicrocheilus scedastes*; both species of native invertebrate. The regionally rare gossamer damselfly (*Ischnura aurora*) also breeds in the lagoons and wetlands. This is New Zealand's smallest dragonfly, and is recorded from only 4 other localities in Hawke's Bay. These areas are also used by native waterfowl including pukeko (*Porphyrio melanotus*), pied stilt (*Himantopus leucocephalus*) and the threatened Australasian brown bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*). However the value of the wetlands as wildlife habitat is threatened by infilling with soil and garden waste, and disturbance and predation by domestic dogs.

7. Te Awanga - North Ocean Beach

This site is of considerable significance to the tangata whenua. Archaeological sites date back to the Mōa-hunter period, and include numerous pa (Te Awanga, Clifton, Black Reef, Whakapu Bluff and north Ocean Beach), urupa and midden. A track once crossed Cape Kidnappers linking coastal communities to the south with those from Hawke Bay. The beach at Rangaiika is waahi tapu. Known to Māori as Te Matau a Maui, Cape Kidnappers represents the remains of the hook that Maui used to fish up the North Island (Te Ika a Maui).

The intertidal and near shore reef systems continue to be an important source of kaimoana for the tangata whenua.

European archaeological sites include a whaling station and the wreck of the Go Ahead at Rangaiika.

Approximately 8.25 km of coast is backed by cliffs up to 121 m high, the seaward extension of which forms Cape Kidnappers. In addition to their scenic value, these cliffs provide excellent exposure of tectonic features such as folding, faulting and uplift. The arched high level terrace of Cape Kidnappers is an uplifted and tilted marine planation surface, a distinctive feature of the geomorphology of Hawke's Bay.

Cape Kidnappers has particularly high wildlife values. The gannet colonies (Black Reef, Plateau, Saddle and Shoreline) are of international significance due to their accessibility. White-fronted tern (*Sterna striata*) also breed above Black Reef, and the reef itself is the major roost site for spotted shag (*Stictocarbo punctatus*) in Hawke's Bay. Remnant native insect populations, including *Arachnocampa luminosa*, *Tingena siderota* and *Aenetes virescens*, occur in bush remnants clothing the sides of several gullies between Clifton and the Cape.

There is a healthy colony of the shore creeper *Muehlenbeckia ephedroides*, now uncommon in the North Island, at Te Awanga.

The lagoon formed at the mouth of the Maraetotara River is one of the main habitats of the regionally rare gossamer damselfly (*Ischnura aurora*).

The dune system at Rangaiika is isolated and relatively unmodified. Consequently it has high botanical values, supporting healthy populations of *Spinifex sericeus* and the regionally rare pingao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*), as well as karaka trees (*Corynocarpus laevigatus*).

North Ocean Beach contains the largest populations of pingao (*D. spiralis*) in Hawke's Bay, and one of the largest and least modified dune systems on the east coast of the North Island between East Cape and Cape Palliser. The native sand hopper *Talorchestia spadix* was recently collected in large numbers here and at Porangahau for the first time since the species was described by Hurley in 1956. Previously it was known from only two South Island localities (Hurley pers. comm.).

8. Waimarama and Motu o Kura (Bare Island)

This site encompasses Motu o Kura, the Waimarama Fishing Reserve and adjacent coast.

Polynesian settlement of the area extends back to the Moa-hunter period. Maori settlement followed, and local people trace their descent from Rangitane, four crew members of the Takitimu canoe, and Rongomaipureora (Ngati Kahungunu). A substantial Maori population existed prior to Colenso's visit in 1845, and the area has one of the highest densities of archaeological sites recorded in Hawke's Bay. These include occupation sites, fortified pa, urupa and middens.

In 1924 the tangata whenua petitioned the Minister of Marine concerning establishment of a reserve to protect traditional fisheries at Waimarama. The result was a trawl ban within 3 miles of the coast between Haupouri and Karamea in 1925. In 1959 the Waimarama Tribal Committee petitioned Parliament about heavy fishing pressure on shellfish and seaweed beds in the area, and in 1960 the Marine Department recommended that commercial fishing be prohibited within an area to be defined around Waimarama. Markers were erected in March 1961 but the northern markers were later repositioned at the Waipuka Stream, Ocean Beach in December 1961 following an objection to their original position made by the Tribal Committee.

Motu o Kura is the only true island between Wairoa and Wellington. Little blue penguin (*Eudyptula minor*), sooty shearwater (*Puffinus griseus*) black shag (*Phalacrocorax carbo*) and black-backed gull (*Larus dominicanus*) nest on it. Plant, invertebrate and lizard populations on the island have increased dramatically following the removal of rats. New Zealand fur seals (*Arctocephalus forsteri*) haul out on the eastern side of the island during winter.

Karamea (Red Island) contains well preserved pillow lava sequences interbedded with limestone, and is an excellent example of accreted volcanics at a tectonic plate boundary.

9. Hinemahanga (Kairakau) Rocks

These geologically interesting rocks consist of basaltic pillow lavas with interbedded red-brown limestone and mudstone. They are very similar to the Karamea (Red Island) formation but the latter may have been overturned. Similar basalts occur in eastern Wairarapa, however, none include interbedded red-brown limestone.

The rocks are a very good example of tectonic processes as they are fault bounded, and appear to have been transported a considerable distance from the original site of eruption. They probably represent remnants of the subducted Pacific Plate.

10. Limestone Cliffs at Taupata and Kairakau

These coastal landforms are unique within Hawke's Bay, and retain botanically significant remnant native vegetation. The cliffs at Taupata support large stands of tall karaka (grazed underneath), and those at Kairakau contain the only known population of the rengarenga lily (*Arthropodium candidum*) between Cook Strait and East Cape. Other regionally rare plant species occurring on the cliffs include *Melicope ternata*, *Pittosporum ralphii*, *Hebe veronica squalida* and *Asplenium lyallii*.

11. Intertidal Platforms Situated Between Kairakau - Blackhead Point

The broad intertidal siltstone and mudstone platforms situated along the central Hawke's Bay coast between Kairakau and Blackhead Point have very high wildlife values. They provide feeding habitat for at least 15 species of native birds. A DOC survey of the coastal bird populations of the Hawke's Bay Conservancy (Waikari River - Waimata River, February 1992) recorded approximately 10% of all birds counted in this section of coast.

Species for which these platforms are particularly important are:

	% of total
White-faced heron (<i>Ardea novaehollandiae</i>)	47
Variable oystercatcher (<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>)	45
Red-billed gull (<i>Larus scopulinus</i>)	39
Bar-tailed godwit (<i>Limosa lapponica</i>)	22
Black shag (<i>Phalacrocorax carbo</i>)	20
White-fronted tern (<i>Sterna striata</i>)	18

The threatened reef heron (*Egretta sacra*) is uncommon in Hawke's Bay. Only seven individuals were counted between the Waikari River and Waimata River, in February 1992. Three of these birds were observed on the intertidal platforms between Kairakau and Paoanui Point.

The platforms at the northern end of Pourerere Beach contain deposits rich in fossil foraminifera, and are recognised as a fossil locality of national importance.

The Department of Conservation is currently preparing an application to have a marine reserve established between Aramoana and Blackhead beaches. The proposed reserve encompasses all of the intertidal platform and associated subtidal reef systems. The seaward boundary is situated 1 nautical mile (1.852 km) from MHWS.

These intertidal platforms and the adjacent nearshore reef systems also represent important traditional fisheries to the tangata whenua (Whatuiapiti and Ngati Kere). Prior to European settlement this section of coast was heavily populated, and pa were situated at Blackhead Point (Parimahu), Blackhead, Pourerere and Kairakau. The reefs continue to be an important source of Kaimoana, particularly paua, kina and crayfish, to local communities.

12. Porangahau

The Porangahau estuary is formed behind the best regional example of a longshore bar, and is backed by narrow foredunes and a wide sand plain. Much of the latter is farmed. The dune system just north of the golf course (Site 155, Porangahau-south) has a national priority rating for conservation (Partridge, 1992). The foredune is marram grassland with some *Spinifex sericeus* and pingao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*). Flats within the foredune have sand sedge (*Carex pumila*), *Juncus gregiflorus*, marram (*Ammophila arenaria*) and melilot. Dune flats have extensive areas of *Scirpoides* and *Leptocarpus* with some haretail, melilot, *Olearia solandri*, *Cassinia leptophylla* and pampas. Dune ridges are marram grassland and *Scirpoides* with some pingao, sand coprosma, spinifex and sand pimelea. The rear dune is being progressively converted to *Pinus radiata* forest, pasture and lupin scrub. The Porangahau - central dune system (site 154; Partridge, 1992) is significant in that it supports a population of regionally distinct matagouri (*Discaria toumatou*).

The estuary and Parimahu Wetlands are classified as nationally significant wildlife habitats. The estuary is the largest and least modified on the east coast of the North Island south of Ohiwa Harbour, Bay of Plenty. It is an important feeding and wintering area for migratory waders. It contains the largest concentrations of wrybill³ (*Anarhynchus frontalis*) and the threatened banded dotterel (*Charadrius bicinctus*) in Hawke's Bay. In February 1992 84 banded dotterel were counted in this area. This represents approximately 78% of the individuals of this species recorded in the Hawke's Bay Conservancy at that time. In November 1991 two male New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus*) in breeding plumage were observed in the estuary, although breeding was not confirmed. Also in November 1991 a colony of 30 threatened Caspian Terns (*Hydroprogne caspia*), including 9 nesting pairs, was discovered on the bar. Significant numbers of eastern bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*) and lesser knot (*Calidris canutus*) use the estuary as a stepping stone during migration.

The area is of great significance to the tangata whenua (Ngati Kere). It is rich in archaeological sites, and provided the first authenticated records of moa hunter occupation in the North Island. Vast shell middens are situated in the dune systems, and pa sites occur at either end of the estuary. Twenty fishing sites existed between

³Threatened species

Porangahau township and the sea. Today the estuary continues to be an important source of flatfish, eels and whitebait. The estuary and entire offshore area are subject to a taiapure application (Nga taonga o Ngati Kere). Two rocks offshore are waahi tapu.

13. Cape Turnagain

Cape Turnagain is a visually dominant coastal landform. It is formed by a flat cap of limestone that has protected the siltstone beneath, producing sheer cliffs up to 240m high. These siltstones contain rare fossil crabs. Large areas of slumping and landsliding occur in the area, with limestone and sandstone boulders accumulating on low-angle slopes.

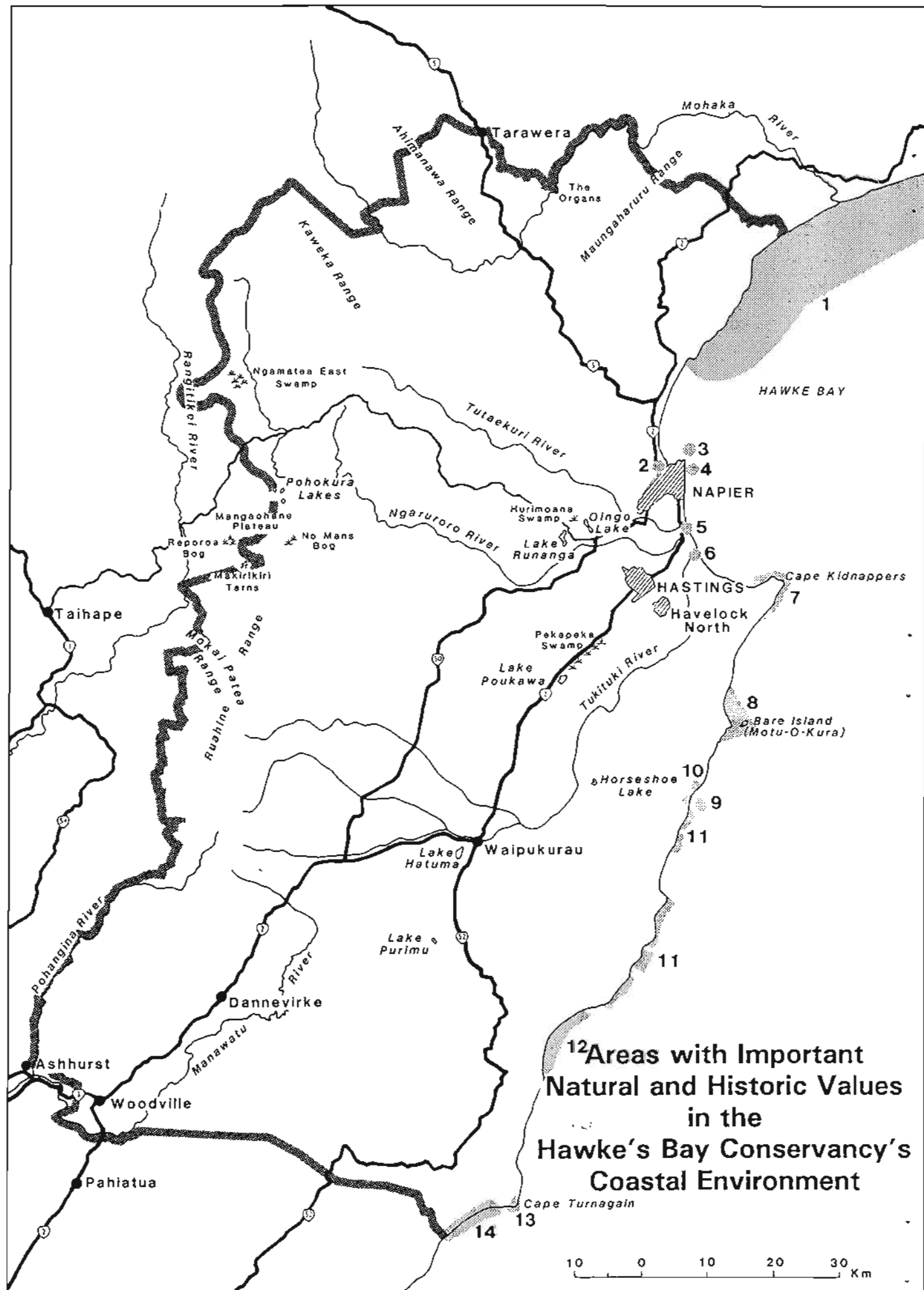
The steep southern face of Cape Turnagain to the mouth of the Tuatane stream supports a variety of coastal plant communities that is unique in Hawke's Bay. These include cliff top karaka forest, boulder fields (flax, *Senecio colensoi*, *Vittadinia australis*, *Poa anceps* var *condensata*), bare cliff and scattered herbfield (*S. colensoi*, *Craspedia viscosa*, *Lagenophora pumila*, *P. anceps*, *Hebe stricta* var *macroura*), flax shrub-land (flax, rangiora, kawakawa), flaxland, toetoe/flaxland, gully forest and shrubland (cabbage tree, rangiora, *Coprosma robusta*, mahoe, ngaio, kowhai, mapou, kohuhu), sand grass duneland (marram, pingao, spinifex, *Pimelea arenaria*, *Coprosma acerosa*), shrub-flax duneland (flax, *P. arenaria*, *C. acerosa*), moist sand flats (*Leptocarpus simplex*, flax, toetoe, *C. acerosa*, *Cassinia retorta*) and forest and shrubland (mahoe, *C. robusta*, ngaio, cabbage tree, karaka).

The flax communities contain both *Phormium tenax* and *P. cookianum*, and a hybrid form. The population of the threatened sand binder pingao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*) is one of the last remaining in the Hawke's Bay Conservancy. The area is also the focus of the distribution of the daisy *Senecio colensoi* var *obtusifolius*.

The area has also become a regular winter hauling ground for New Zealand fur seals. The number of animals hauling out is small, but it is only one of two hauling grounds in the region.

14. Herbertville - Waimata Stream

This area contains a system of longitudinal dunes aligned parallel to, and situated at the rear of a wide beach. The dune system is dominated by marram and grazed by cattle. Despite having relatively low botanical values the dunes contain a large number of archaeological sites, particularly middens. Artifacts recovered from the area date back to the Moa Hunter period.



RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991

Part II Purposes and Principles

The purpose and principles set out in Sections 5, 6 and 7 of the Act. They are:

- to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources by managing the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while -
 - (a) Sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonable foreseeable needs of future generations; and
 - (b) Safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil and ecosystems; and
 - (c) Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.

The Act (Section 6) specifies a list of matters of national importance which must be recognised and provide for. These are:

- (a) "The preservation of the natural character of the coastal environment (including the coastal marine area), wetlands, and lakes and rivers and their margins, and the protection of them from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development:
- (b) The protection of outstanding natural features and landscapes from inappropriate subdivision, use and development.
- (c) The protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna:
- (d) The maintenance and enhancement of public access to and along the coastal marine area, lakes, and rivers:
- (e) The relationship of Maori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, waters, sites, waahi tapu, and other taonga".

In addition, there are a series of other matters for which persons exercising functions and powers under the Act must have particular regard (Section 7). These are:

- (a) Kaitiakitanga
- (b) The efficient use and development of natural and physical resources:
- (c) The maintenance and enhancement of amenity values:
- (d) Intrinsic values of ecosystems:

- (e) Recognition and protection of the heritage values of sites, buildings, places or areas:
- (f) Maintenance and enhancement of the quality of the environment:
- (g) Any finite characteristics of natural and physical resources:
- (h) The protection of the habitat of trout and salmon.

In respect of private land, the Department will advocate all of the above principles which are consistent with its own mandate under the Conservation Act and other relevant statutes (eg Wildlife Act, Reserves Act).

**CRITERIA USED BY THE DEPARTMENT
FOR IDENTIFYING AREAS OF SIGNIFICANT
CONSERVATION VALUE IN THE COASTAL MARINE AREA**

The Minister of Conservation may use one or more of the following criteria in assessing whether an area has significant conservation values.

(i) **Maori Cultural Values**

Areas of local, regional, or national significance identified by the tangata whenua in accordance with correct and customary Maori procedure, including waahi tapu, urupa, tauranga waka and mahinga maataitai.

(ii) **Protected Areas**

Where there are protection areas below Mean High Water Springs

Any gazetted or notified marine reserve, marine mammal sanctuary, marine park or other marine protected area, including adequate buffer areas, or any proposal which is under current investigation.

(iii) **Where there are protected areas above Mean High Water Springs**

Where there are protected areas above mean high water springs, consideration may be given to whether the adjoining area below mean high water springs should be identified as an area of significant conservation value.

(iv) **Wetlands, Estuaries and Coastal Lagoons**

Any wetland, estuary, or coastal lagoon in the coastal marine area which is of national or international importance, including those:

- (a) necessary to act as buffer zones;
- (b) that are important spawning grounds or nurseries for marine and freshwater species;
- (c) where related catchments, marginal land and tidal flats have been minimally modified;
- (d) strategically situated to act as stepping stones for migratory species along coastal tracts.

(v) **Ecosystems, Flora and Fauna Habitats**

Any area that contains regionally, nationally or internationally significant or threatened ecosystem or plant or animal species.

(vi) **Scenic Sites**

Any part of the coastal marine area that forms a land or seascape of national or international importance.

(vii) **Historic Places**

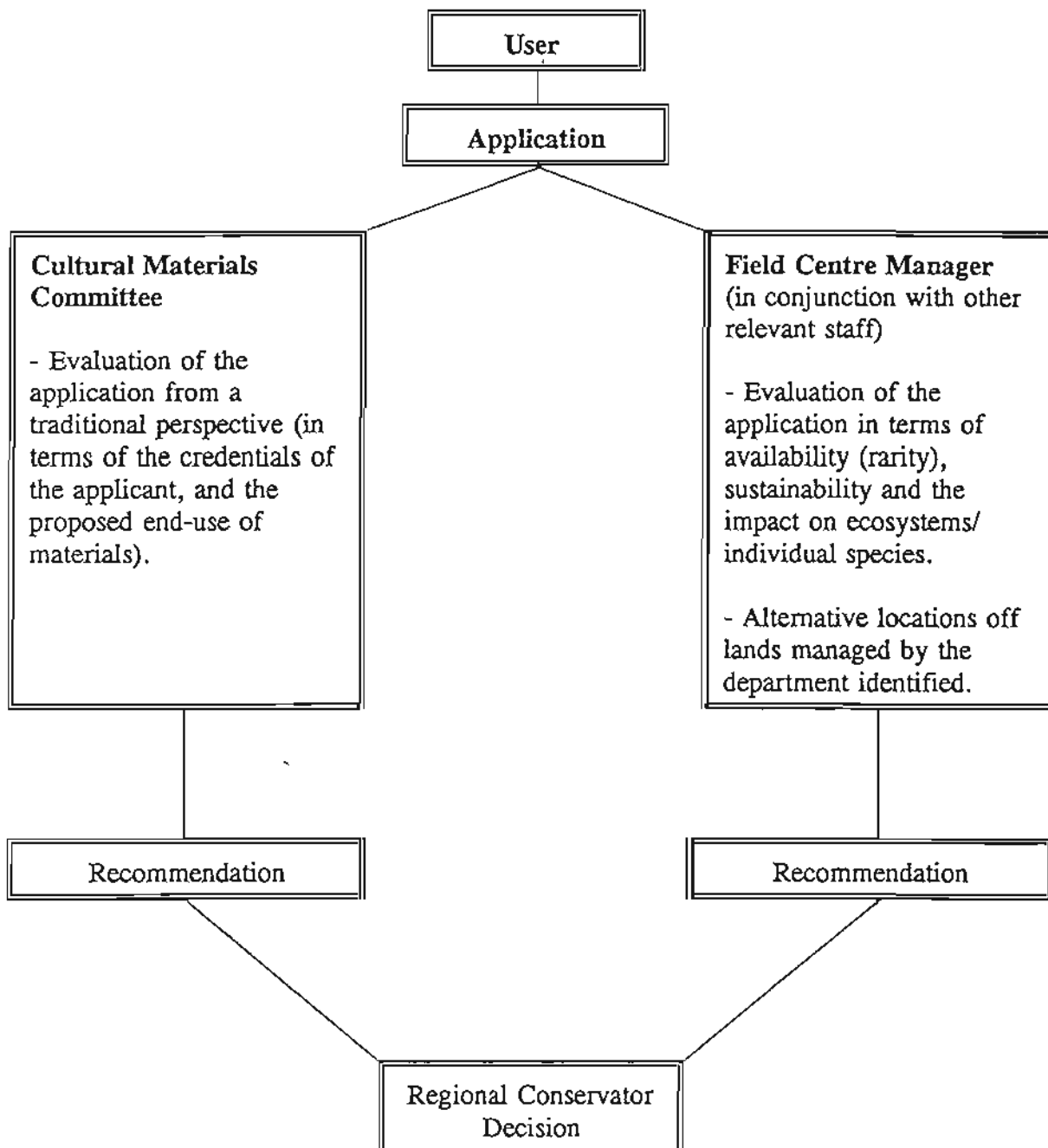
Historic places of national or outstanding (including archaeological sites adjoining mean high water springs), especially places where the values relate to the seabed as well as to the land.

(viii) **Coastal Landforms and Associated Processes**

Representative examples of nationally significant or outstanding coastal landforms and their associated sediment transport systems and sources including:

- (a) Submerged landforms (eg fiords, drowned river valleys, banks, reefs, moraines, and drowned shorelines).
- (b) Erosional landforms including those have been carved out of the land by the sea (eg shore platforms and submarine canyons)
- (c) Geologically rare or unusual features of very high quality.

**APPLICATIONS FROM IWI TO GATHER MATERIALS FROM
LANDS MANAGED BY THE DEPARTMENT OR TO TAKE
PROTECTED SPECIES FOR CULTURAL PURPOSES -
PROCEDURE TO BE FOLLOWED**



**APPLICATION FOR CULTURAL MATERIALS
FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION**

1. Name of applicant: _____

2. Contact address: _____

Phone No: _____

3. Type of cultural material required: _____

4. Quantity required (e.g. timber measurements, number and type of whale bones, number of feathers or skins, number of leaves/tufts of pingao, kiekie, harakeke):

5. What is the material required for? Give details and dimensions of the end product:

6. Will the material be used for monetary gain? _____

7. Who will work the material? _____

8. Where will the material be worked? _____

9. Where will the material be housed when the work is completed? _____

10. Who will instruct the use of the material? _____

- 11. What qualifications/experience does the instructor have? _____

- 12. Are traditional or modern methods to be used? _____

- 13. Is the finished project required for a specific purpose or occasion? _____

IN THE CASE OF HARVESTED MATERIAL

- 14. Who will harvest the material? _____

- 15. How will the material be harvested? Give details of harvesting/extraction method if known: _____

- 16. Is a particular area preferred or identified for harvest? _____
If YES, what is the name of this area? _____
- 17. Have resources of this material been identified here? _____
- 18. Who are the tangata whenua for this area? _____
- 19. Can materials be taken from other sites? _____
- 20. Who will possess the material? _____

-
- 21. Is there a time limit for this request? _____

-
22. If materials other than kiwi, kereru, kaka and tui feathers and whalebone or whale teeth can't be used, give reasons why. _____

23. Are other materials possible for this use? _____
24. Will similar material be needed for other uses by you in the near future?

25. Has this application been authorised by Marae Committee/Runanganui?

26. If this application is on behalf of a marae/iwi/school or other organisation, please give name: _____
27. Contact people for further information are: _____

Signature of Applicant: _____

Date of Application: _____

Completed application to be forward to:

Regional Conservator
Department of Conservation
P O Box 644
NAPIER
Attention: Kaupapa Atawhai Manager

Note: All applications will be forwarded to the Cultural Materials Committee of Hawke's Bay Kaupapa Atawhai for their comment before any resources are allocated.

**CURRENT MANAGEMENT PLANS IN
HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY**

<u>NAME</u>	<u>APPROVED</u>
Maraetotara Gorge Scenic Reserve	17 December 1981
Lake Tutira Recreation Reserve	21 January 1983
Tiwaewae Memorial Reserve	17 April 1984
McLeans Bush Scenic Reserve	20 September 1982
Bellbird Bush Scenic Reserve	19 June 1984
Maraetotara Scenic Reserve	11 January 1982
Blowhard Bush Scenic Reserve	1 June 1988
Otatara Pa Historic Reserve	12 September 1977
William Hartree Memorial Scenic Reserve	28 October 1981
Hutchinson Scenic Reserve	8 July 1982
Tangoio Falls Scenic Reserves	9 October 1981
Balls Clearing Scenic Reserve	2 August 1982
Opouahi Scenic Reserve	9 October 1981
Boundary Stream Scenic Reserve	9 November 1981
Tarawera Hot Springs Reserve	14 September 1984
Turangakumu Scenic Reserve	7 December 1983
Monckton Scenic Reserve	24 March 1982
Inglis Bush Scenic Reserve	4 April 1984
Parkers Bush Scenic Reserve	10 October 1983
A'Deanes Bush Scenic Reserve	24 March 1982
Mohi Bush Scenic Reserve	28 October 1981
Waipatiki Scenic Reserve	9 October 1981
White Pine Bush Scenic Reserve	9 October 1981
Cape Kidnappers Bird Sanctuary	2 October 1986
Ruahine Forest Park	11 February 1992
Kaweka Forest Park	14 June 1991

**STATUTORY FUNCTIONS AND POWERS OF
CONSERVATION BOARDS**

(Extracts from the Conservation Act 1987)

"6M Functions of the Boards - (1) The functions of each Board shall be:

- "(a) To recommend the approval by the Conservation Authority of conservation management strategies, and the review and amendment of such strategies, under the relevant enactments:
- "(b) To approve conservation management plans, and the review and amendment of such plans, under the relevant enactments:
- "(c) To advise the Conservation Authority and the Director General on the implementation of conservation management strategies and conservation management plans for the areas within the jurisdiction of the Board:
- "(d) To advise the Conservation Authority or the Director General -
 - (i) On any proposed change of status or classification of any area of national or international importance; and
 - (ii) On any other conservation matter relating to any area within the jurisdiction of the Board:
- "(e) To advise the Conservation Authority and the Director General on proposals for new walkways in any area within the jurisdiction of the Board:
- "(f) To liaise with any Fish and Game Council on matters within the jurisdiction of the Board:
- "(g) To exercise such powers and functions as may be delegated to it by the Minister under this Act or any other Act.

"(2) Every Board shall have such other functions as are conferred on it by or under this Act or any other Act."

"6N Powers of Boards - (1) Every Board shall have all such powers as are reasonably necessary or expedient to enable it to carry out its functions.

- "(2) Without limiting the generality of subsection (1) of this section, each Board may -
 - "(a) Advocate its interests at any public forum or in any statutory planning process; and
 - "(b) Appoint committees of members and other suitable persons, and delegate to them functions and powers.

- "(3) The power conferred by subsection (2)(a) of this section shall include the right to appear before courts and tribunals in New Zealand and be heard on matters affecting or relating to the Board's functions."

*HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY REGISTER OF ACTIVELY
MANAGED HISTORIC PLACES*

A Historic Resources Strategy has been prepared for the Conservancy (see bibliography 13). Included in the strategy is a conservation register which gives resource information and future management options for each of the twelve actively managed historic places located in areas managed by the Department.

A conservation goal is to minimise future physical deterioration at these places. The standard of some of these places, in time, will be improved and some may also be enhanced with facilities and information for visitor.

The register does not contain all the special historic places in the Conservancy. Some may not yet be known by the Department and some others of special interest to Maori will not be highlighted in this manner unless there is full iwi endorsement.

The twelve places on the register are:

1. Ellis Hut - Located in Ruahine Forest Park
2. Falconer Cottage - Located in Ruahine Forest Park
3. Former Napier Courthouse - Located within Conservancy Office Courthouse Reserve
4. Former Pendle Hill Homestead - Located within Ongaonga Base Conservation land
5. Heipipi Pa - Located within Heipipi Pa Historic Reserve
6. Iron Whare - Located in Kaweka Forest Park
7. Kuripapango - (First bridge, coach road, hotel sites and stable/woolshed) - Located in Kaweka Forest Park
8. Manson's Hut - Located in Kaweka Forest Park.
9. Otatara Pa - Located within Otatara Pa Historic Reserve
10. Robson's Lodge - Located in Kaweka Forest Park
11. Shutes Hut - Located in Ruahine Forest Park
12. Tiwaewae Historic Reserve

Information on the above historic places and on management intentions for them is available in the Conservancy's Historic Resources Strategy.

As more information becomes available, priorities change or more/fewer resources are available further places may be added to this list and/or some of these places may be deleted.

***STANDARD TRACK CLASSIFICATION
(HILLARY COMMISSION FOR RECREATION AND SPORT, AND
DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION -1992)***

The following categories have been adopted by the Department (1992) to provide a consistent classification system for walking tracks.

*** PATH**

Easy and well formed. Constructed to allow for wheelchair access or to "shoe" standard. Suitable for people of all ages and fitness levels.

Description

- Well formed path with easy grades. Suitable for all abilities and experience.
- Divided into two types:
 - Barrier free: suitable access for people with disabilities
 - Other: limits access for people with disabilities possibly due to steeper grade and use of steps.

*** WALKING TRACK**

Easy and well formed. Constructed to "shoe" standard. Suitable for people of most ages and fitness levels.

Description

- A defined, formed track. Suitable for most abilities and experience.

*** TRAMPING TRACK**

Requires skill and experience. Constructed to "boot" standard. Suitable for people of average physical fitness.

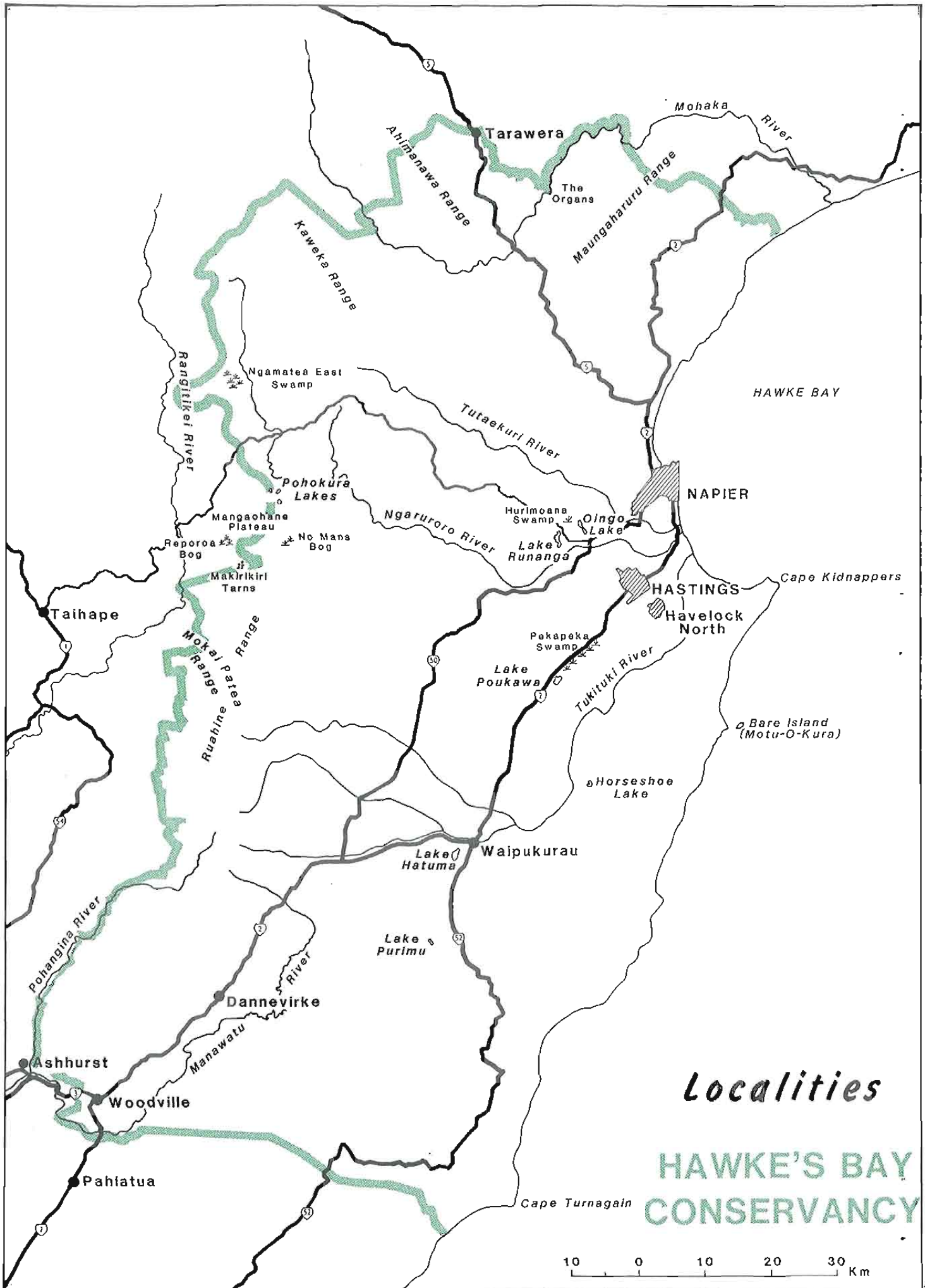
Description

- Limited track formation, often with steep grades. Suitable for fit, experienced and properly equipped people.

*** ROUTE**

Requires a high degree of skill/experience and route-finding ability. Suitable for well equipped trampers.

- Lightly cut marked or unmarked tracks, often with steep grades. Suitable for fit, experienced, well equipped people. Streams or rivers may not be bridged.



***NATURAL CRITERIA USED TO DETERMINE PRIORITY
RECOMMENDED AREAS FOR PROTECTION (RAP'S)***

1 **Representativeness**

The extent to which an area contains examples of ecosystems or communities, or examples of combinations of ecosystems or communities (including combinations along ecological gradients), that are either unrepresented or poorly represented in existing protected natural areas (within New Zealand and/or the ecological district).

2 **Natural diversity**

The extent to which an area contains a diversity of species, habitats, communities, ecosystems and physical features (including features relating to climate, landforms, drainage patterns, geology and soils).

3 **Rarity and distinctiveness**

The extent to which an area contains examples of rare or distinctive elements of New Zealand's natural diversity (including examples of species or communities that are unique or endemic to either New Zealand, the region or the ecological district).

4 **Naturalness**

The extent to which an area is characterised by a lack of human disturbance or intervention.

5 **Long-term viability**

The extent to which an area will be able to retain its inherent natural values and character over a long time period (including factors related to the nature of the ecosystems and/or communities contained in the area, and factors related to external influences).

6 **Area, shape, spatial configuration and boundaries**

The extent to which an area proposed for protection has been designed to ensure its effectiveness in protecting the natural features it contains, and to ensure its long-term viability (including the extent to which the relationship of the area proposed for protection to other existing protected natural areas in the surrounding area has been considered in design of the proposal).

**AREAS MANAGED BY THE DEPARTMENT WITHIN HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY
WHERE GENERALLY PERMISSION WILL NOT BE GIVEN FOR THE TAKING OF INDIGENOUS FISH
(INCLUDING EELS) FOR COMMERCIAL PURPOSES**

NAME OF AREA	GRID REF.	TYPE OF HABITAT	PRESENT STATUS	NATURAL/HISTORIC VALUES
Lake Opouahi	V19 415215	Fresh deepwater lake	Scenic Reserve	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Lake Tutira	V20 460130	Fresh deepwater lakes	Recreation Reserve	Priority: High Ecological diversity Historical
Lake Waikapiro	V20 463115		and Wildlife Refuge	
Lake Orakai	V20 456114		Northern end Maori land	
Morrison's Lake	V19 296226	Fresh deepwater lake	Wildlife Management Reserve	Priority: Ecological diversity
Ahuriri Estuary	V21 434838 to 413897	Saline - Fresh tidal estuary	Conservation Area Part Wildlife Refuge	Priority: High Ecological diversity Historical Fish Communities
Westshore Lagoon	V21 433845	Brackish Lagoon	Recreation Reserve and Wildlife Refuge	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Kuripapango or Kaweka Lakes	U20 897994	Fresh deepwater lakes (2)	Kaweka Forest Park	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Lake Colenso (Kokopunui)	U21 790658	Fresh deepwater lake	Ruahine Forest Park	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Mohaka River (parts)	U20 052197 U20 to 100184	River (part headwaters)	Within Kaweka Forest Park	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Ngaruroro River (parts)	U20 926043 to 917127	River (part headwaters)	Within Kaweka and Ruahine Forest Parks	Priority: High Ecological diversity

**AREAS NOT MANAGED BY THE DEPARTMENT WITHIN HAWKE'S BAY CONSERVANCY WHERE
RESTRICTIONS OR CONTROLS ARE RECOMMENDED FOR COMMERCIAL TAKING OF
INDIGENOUS FISH (INCLUDING EELS)**

NAME OF AREA	GRID REF.	TYPE OF HABITAT	PRESENT STATUS	NATURAL/ HISTORIC VALUES
Lake Poukawa Pekapeka Swamp Pekapeka Stream Karamu Stream	V22 270515 V22 348595 V21 427708 to 353600	Shallow lake and downstream wetland and migratory routes to these areas	Lake - Maori owned Wetland - Crown and private Streams - Various but mainly public	Priority: High Ecological diversity Historical Mahinga kai
Lake Runanga	V21 285735	Shallow lake	Multiple Maori and private owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity Mahinga kai
Lake Hatuma	V23 105255	Shallow lake	Multiple private and Crown owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Lake Oingo	V21 325755	Shallow lake	Multiple private and Crown owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Lake Purimu	U23 068125	Shallow lake	Multiple private owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Te Roto Kare	V21 363755	Shallow lake	Multiple owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Lindsay Lakes (4)	V20 345930	Shallow to medium depth lakes (3)	Private owner	Priority: Medium Ecological diversity
Horseshoe Lake	V22 315360	Shallow to medium depth lake	Private with Wildlife Refuge status	Priority: Medium Ecological diversity

NAME OF AREA	GRID REF.	TYPE OF HABITAT	PRESENT STATUS	NATURAL/ HISTORIC VALUES
Mohaka River, upstream of the Te Hoe confluence	Upstream of grid reference V19 405351	River	Multiple private and Crown owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity
Ngaruroro River, upstream of Whanawhana	Upstream of grid reference U21 032769	River	Multiple owners and Crown owners	Priority: High Ecological diversity

CONVENTION ON BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

The world's biological diversity - the variability among living organisms - is valuable for ecological, genetic, social, economic, scientific, educational, cultural, recreational and aesthetic reasons.

The diversity is important for evaluation, and for maintaining the life-sustaining systems of the biosphere. The conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity are of critical importance to meet the food, health and other needs of the growing world population.

However, biological diversity is being significantly reduced by certain human activities, and it is vital to anticipate, prevent and attack the causes of this loss. Substantial investments are required to conserve biological diversity, but they will pay off with a broad range of environmental, economic and social benefits.

The world needs to conserve biological diversity and make sustainable use of its components in a fair and equitable way. Sustainable use means use in a way and at a rate that does not lead to the long-term decline of biological diversity. This will maintain its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of present and future generations. The uses include those of genetic material, which is any plant, animal microbial or other material containing functional units of heredity. We also need to conserve ecosystems, which are groupings of living and non-living material that act as a unit.

Countries have rights over their biological resources, but they are also responsible for conserving their biological diversity and for using their biological resources in a sustainable manner.

Nations that join the Convention shall:

- Identify the components of biological diversity important for conservation and sustainable use, and monitor activities which may have adverse impacts this diversity.
- Develop national strategies, plans or programmes for the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity.
- Make conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity part of planning and policy making.
- Use the media and educational programmes to help people understand the importance of biological diversity and need for measures to conserve it.
- Establish laws to protect threatened species, develop systems of protected areas to conserve biological diversity, and promote environmentally sound development around these areas.
- Rehabilitate and restore degraded ecosystems and promote the recovery of threatened species, helping local people to develop and carry out these remedial plans.
- Establish means to control the risks from organisms modified by biotechnology.

- Use environmental impact assessment, with public participation, on projects that threaten biological diversity, in order to avoid or minimize damage.
- Prevent the introduction of, control or eradicate alien species with threaten ecosystems, habitats or species.

Many indigenous and local communities have a close dependence on biological resources, and nations should make use of this traditional knowledge of the conservation and sustainable use of biological diversity. Countries are to preserve and maintain such indigenous and local knowledge and promote its wider use. This is to be done with the approval and involvement of those who have such knowledge, and these people should benefit from the use of their practices.

The Convention says that:

- Countries are to facilitate access to genetic materials within their borders for environmentally sound uses. Access will be allowed with the aim of sharing in a fair and equitable way the results of research and development and the benefits arising from the commercial and other uses of genetic resources.
- Developing countries are to have access to environmentally sound technologies that they need for the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity. This access will be under fair and most favourable terms, and will recognize patent rights.
- Developing countries are to have access to technology that makes use of resources they provided. They are also to have a role in biotechnical research.
- Developing nations are to receive technical and scientific assistance, so that they can develop their own institutions and expertise in sustainable use of biological diversity.
- Countries are to consider the need for an agreement on the safe handling and use of living organisms modified by biotechnology.
- Developed countries that sign the Convention shall provide new financial aid to developing countries to help them implement terms of the Convention. The initial funding will be handled by three United Nations organisations involved in environment and development.

The Convention comes into force once it has been ratified by 30 nations.

Source: Michael Keating, 1993 The Earth Summit's Agenda for Change. A Plain Language version of Agenda 21 and the other Bio Agreements. Centre For Our Common Future, April 1993, Geneva.

SECTION 4 OF THE RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991
(as amended by the RM Amendment Act 1993)

The Resource Management Act 1991 and land administered by the Department of Conservation

The Crown is bound by the Resource Management Act 1991. This means that the Resource Management Act, and the policies and plans prepared by territorial local authorities and regional councils under the Act, apply to the Department as they do to any other organisation or individual.

The Department, and any other organisation or individual undertaking works or activities on the land the Department administers, must apply for any resource consents required by the Act or the plans prepared under it.

The Act does not contain any exemption for works or activities of the Crown which will require consent from regional councils. Consent will be required from regional councils for many of the activities undertaken by the Department and its concessionaires. Examples of activities which may require a resource consent from a regional council are toilets, or any activity which disturbs the bed of a lake or river.

However, section 4 of the Resource Management Act affords works or activities of the Crown a limited exemption from consents required by territorial local authorities (district councils) in the following circumstances:

- if the proposed work or activity is consistent with this conservation management strategy or a conservation management plan or strategy formulated under the legislation administered by the Department; and
- the work or activity will not have a significant adverse effect beyond the boundary of the area of land.

If these criteria are met then the Department will not require a consent under the Resource Management Act from a territorial local authority for its proposed activity or work. This exemption does not apply to land administered by the Department for administrative purposes.

Works or activities of concessionaires or holders of leases or licences are not exempt from gaining appropriate consent under the Resource Management Act for any works or activities.

To ensure that the statutory obligations under the Resource Management Act 1991 are met the Department will:

- discuss proposals for works and activities it proposes to undertake with territorial local authorities and regional councils as appropriate;
- encourage applicants for concessions and leases and licences to discuss their proposals with territorial local authorities and regional councils and obtain necessary resource consents;
- work with territorial local authorities and regional councils to ensure land administered by the Department is covered appropriately in planning documents prepared under the Resource Management Act."

LIST OF WILDLIFE MENTIONED IN THE TEXT

Common Name	Latin Name
Australasian bittern	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i>
Australasian gannet	<i>Sula bassana serratator</i>
banded dotterel	<i>Charadrius bicinctus</i>
bellbird	<i>Anthornis melanura</i>
black-backed gull	<i>Larus dominicanus</i>
black-billed gull	<i>Larus bulleri</i>
black-fronted dotterel	<i>Charadrius melanops</i>
black-fronted tern	<i>Sterna albostrata</i>
blue cod	<i>Parapercis colias</i>
blue duck	<i>Hymenolaimus malacorphynchos</i>
blue penguin	<i>Eudyptula minor</i>
branded wrasse	<i>Notolabrus fucicola</i>
brown kiwi	<i>Apteryx australis</i>
butterfish	<i>Odax pullus</i>
caspian tern	<i>Hydroprogne caspia</i>
deer (red)*	<i>Cervus elaphus scoticus</i>
deer (sika)*	<i>Cervus nippon</i>
dwarf galaxias	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>
dwarf scorpionfish	<i>Scorpaena papillosus</i>
fernbird	<i>Bowdleria punctata</i>
ferret*	<i>Mustela putorius</i>
galaxiids	<i>Galaxias spp.</i>
goat*	<i>Capra hircus</i>
grass carp*	<i>Ctenopharyngodon idella</i>
hare*	<i>Lepus europaeus occidentalis</i>
inanga	<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>
kahawai	<i>Arripis trutta</i>
kaka	<i>Nestor meridionalis</i>
kokopu	<i>Galaxias spp</i>
longfinned eel	<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>
long-tailed bat	<i>Chalinolobus tuberculatus</i>
long-tailed cuckoo	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i>
marblefish (maori chief)	<i>Aplodactylus arcidens</i>
mole cricket	<i>Triames captor aotea</i>
New Zealand dabchick	<i>Podiceps rufopectus</i>
New Zealand dotterel	<i>Charadrius obscurus</i>
New Zealand falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>
New Zealand pigeon (kereru)	<i>Hemphaga novaeseelandiae</i>
New Zealand scaup	<i>Aythya novaeseelandiae</i>

Common Name	Latin Name
New Zealand shoveller	<i>Anas rhynchotis variegata</i>
North Island robin	<i>Petroica australis longipes</i>
paradise shelduck	<i>Tadorna viriegata</i>
pied stilt	<i>Himantopus leucocephalus</i>
pig*	<i>Sus scrofa</i>
possum*	<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>
Powelliphanta snails	<i>Powelliphanta spp.</i>
Rabbit*	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus cuniculus</i>
Rat (brown)	<i>Rattus norvegicus</i>
Rat (ship)*	<i>Rattus rattus</i>
red moki	<i>Cheilodactylus spectabilis</i>
reef heron	<i>Egretta sacra sacra</i>
rifleman	<i>Acanthisitta chloris</i>
royal spoonbill	<i>Platalea leucorodia regia</i>
shag	<i>Phalacrocorax spp.</i>
shortfinned eel	<i>Anguilla australis</i>
small-scaled skink (Taihape skink)	<i>Leiopisma microlepis</i>
sooty shearwater	<i>Puffinus griseus</i>
South Island pied oyster catcher	<i>Haematopus ostralegus finschi</i>
spotless crake	<i>Porzana tabuensis</i>
spotty	<i>Notolabrus celidotus</i>
spur-winged plover	<i>Lobibyx novaehollandiae</i>
stoat*	<i>Mustela erminea</i>
triplefins	<i>Forsterygion spp.</i>
tui	<i>Prothemadera novaeseelandiae</i>
variable oyster catcher	<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>
weasel*	<i>Mustela nivalis</i>
whitebait	<i>Galaxias spp</i> (predominantly <i>G.maculatus</i>)
white heron	<i>Egretta alba</i>
wrybill	<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i>
yellow-crowned parakeet (kakariki)	<i>Cyanoramphus auriceps auriceps</i>

* Introduced Species

LIST OF PLANT NAMES MENTIONED IN THE TEXT

Common Name	Botanical Name
black beech	<i>Nothofagus solandri var. solandri</i>
blackberry*	<i>Rubus fruticosus</i>
bracken	<i>Pteridium esculentum</i>
broom*	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>
buddleja*	<i>Buddleja davidii</i>
cabbage tree	<i>Cordyline australis</i>
cliff tussock	<i>Chionochloa flavicans</i>
Cook's scurvy grass	<i>Lepidium oleraceum</i>
flax	<i>Phormium spp.</i>
fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia excorticata</i>
gorse*	<i>Ulex europaeus</i>
Hall's totara	<i>Podocarpus hallii</i>
hawkweeds*	<i>Hieracium spp.</i>
heather*	<i>Calluna vulgaris</i>
horopito (pepperwood)	<i>Pseudowintera colorata</i>
hydrilla*	<i>Hydrilla verticillata</i>
Japanese honeysuckle*	<i>Lonicera japonica</i>
kahikatea	<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>
kakabeak	<i>Clianthus puniceus</i>
kamahi	<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>
kanuka	<i>Kunzea ericoides</i>
karaka	<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>
kowhai	<i>Sophora spp.</i>
lacebark	<i>Hoheria populnea</i>
lupin*	<i>Lupinus arboreus</i>
maire	<i>Nestegis spp.</i>
manuka	<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>
marram grass*	<i>Ammophila arenaria</i>
matagouri	<i>Discaria toumatou</i>
matai	<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>
miro	<i>Prumnopitys ferruginea</i>
mistletoe	<i>Ileostylus micranthus</i>
mountain beech	<i>Nothofagus solandri var. cliffortioides</i>
mountain holly	<i>Olearia ilicifolia</i>
nikau	<i>Rhopalostylis sapida</i>
northern toatoa	<i>Phyllocladus glaucus</i>

* Introduced Plants

Common Name**Botanical Name**

old mans beard*

Clematis vitalba

pingao

Desmoschoenus spiralis

raupo

Typha orientalis

red beech

Nothofagus fusca

red tussock

Chinochloa rubra

renga lily

Arthropodium cirratum

rewarewa

Knightia excelsa

rimu

Dacrydium cupressinum

sand coprosma

Coprosma acerosa

shield fern

Polystichum vestitum

silver beech

Nothofagus menziesii

tawari

Ixerba brexioides

tauhinu

Cassinia leptophylla

titoki

Alectryon excelsus

totara

Podocarpus totara

tree ferns

Cyathea and Dicksonia spp.

willow*

Salix spp.

* Introduced Plants

LIST OF PLANT NAMES FOR WHICH COMMON NAMES ARE NOT USED

Botanical Name

Bulbophyllum tuberculatum

Carex buchanaii

Dracrophyllum latifolium

Hebe colensoi var *hillii*

Jovellana sinclairii

Muehlenbeckia ephedrioids

Myosotis saxosa

Myriophyllum robustum

Pimelea arenaria

Pittosporum obcordatum

Pittosporum turneri

Plantago picta

Pleurosorus rutifolius

Quintinnia serrata

Ranunculus recens var

Senecio banksii

Teucrium parvifolium

Uncinia strictissima

Utricularia colensoi

Utricularia subsimilis

Utricularia vulcanica

Glossary

GLOSSARY

advocacy. The collective term for work done to promote conservation to the public and outside agencies by the Conservation Department, Conservation Boards and the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Advocacy includes taking part in land use planning processes and using a range of methods to inform and educate the public and visitors on conservation issues.

amend. In relation to conservation management strategies, conservation management plans, freshwater fisheries management plans and sports fish and game management plans, means any change that does not affect the objectives of the strategy or plan. Such a change may not require a full public process. *(Conservation Act 1987)*

archaeological site. Any place in New Zealand, including shipwrecks, which was associated with human activity more than 100 years before and which through investigation by archaeological techniques may provide scientific, cultural, or historical evidence as to the exploration, occupation, settlement, or development of New Zealand.

(Historic Places Act 1980)

Areas of Significant Conservation Value (ASCV's). Areas identified as having significant conservation values, as determined by the Minister of Conservation, and as provided for in the Resource Management Act 1991.

benthic fauna. Animals living in or on the seafloor, or on the bed of a lake or river.

biodiversity/biological diversity. The variability among living organisms from all sources including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and the ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems.

(United Nations Convention on Biological Diversity 1992)

coastal environment. An environment in which the coast usually is a significant part or element. The extent of the coastal environment will vary from place to place depending how much it affects or is (directly) affected by coastal processes and the management issue concerned. It includes at least three distinct, but interrelated parts; the coastal marine area, the active coastal zone, and the land back-drop.

coastal marine area. The area of foreshore and seabed between the outer limit of the territorial sea and mean high water springs. At river mouths the landward boundary is the lesser of; one kilometre upstream or five times the width of the river mouth.

(Resource Management Act 1991)

concession. A concession is a lease, easement, licence or permit granted to enable the carrying on of a trade, occupation or business on areas managed by the department.

(Draft Concessions Policy, November 1992)

conservancy. The Department of Conservation has 14 regional offices in different parts of the country. Each office and/or the region it is responsible for is called a conservancy.

conservation. In respect of conservation areas, means the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations.

(Conservation Act 1987)

conservation area. All land, foreshore and interest in land held under the Conservation Act 1987.

(Conservation Act 1987)

conservation boards. There are 17 regional conservation boards, each comprising up to 10 appointed members. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of the conservation management strategies and national park management plans for their area, approval of conservation management plans (e.g. for Forest Parks), advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority or Director-General of DOC on regional conservation matters and advising on new walkways in the region.

(Conservation Act 1987 s6M)

Conservation Management Plan (CMP). A plan for the management of natural and historic resources, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes which implements the conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within any area or areas specified in a conservation management strategy.

(Conservation Act 1987 s17E)

Conservation Management Strategy, (CMS). A strategy which implements General Policies and establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. The strategy is reviewed every 10 years.

(Conservation Act 1987 s17D)

consultation. A genuine invitation to give advice and genuine consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to the consulted to enable it to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue.

(adapted from McGechan decision in *Air New Zealand v Wellington International Airport* (CP403/91, 6 January 1992))

corporate plan. An annual plan which the Department is required to prepare.

(Public Finance Act 1989)

Department, the. Department of Conservation.

district plan. This is prepared and changed by the territorial authority according to the requirements of the Resource Management Act 1987 for the purpose of sustainable management of natural and physical resources. District plans indicate what uses are permitted for land within the district.

(Resource Management Act 1991)

ecology. The study of organisms in relation to one another and to their surroundings.

(NZ Pocket Oxford Dictionary)

ecological district. One of the major levels used for the ecological classification of land. New Zealand has been divided into 268 ecological districts according to geological, topographical, climatic and biological features and processes, which interrelate to produce characteristic landscapes and ranges of biological communities.

(The New Zealand Protected Natural Areas Programme, DSIR)

ecological region. A single, very distinctive ecological district or more commonly, a group of adjacent ecological districts which have diverse but closely related ecological components and relationships.

(The New Zealand Protected Natural Areas Programme, DSIR)

ecosystem. A biological system comprising a community of living organisms and their environment involved together in the process of living. There is a continuous flow of energy and matter through the system. The concept implies process and interaction. They range in size from small freshwater ponds to Earth itself.

endangered. A plant or animals in danger of extinction and whose survival is unlikely if the causal factors continue.

(Red Data Book of New Zealand 1981)

endemic. Refers to species of plants and animals which are unique to an area or animals which may migrate but breed only in the area. (*Red Data Book of New Zealand 1981*)

esplanade reserve. A local purpose reserve usually 20 metres wide, vested in the territorial authority or in the Crown with the purposes of protecting conservation values, enabling public access to or along the sea, a river or lake and recreational use where this is compatible with conservation values. Usually created as a result of subdivision of private land. Refer marginal strips. (*Resource Management Act 1991, Reserves Act 1977*)

estuary. A broad tidal area associated with a river where there is a mixing of saline and freshwater. (*Draft New Zealand Coastal Policy 1992*)

fauna. Animal life of a place or time. (*Collins Concise Dictionary*)

fishery. One or more species of freshwater fish that can be treated as a unit for the purposes of conservation or management. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

foreshore. Shore between high- and low-water marks at mean spring tides. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

flora. Plant life of a given place or time. (*Collins Concise Dictionary*)

freshwater fish. Species of finfish (classes Agnatha and Osteichthyes) and shellfish (classes Mollusca and Crustacea) that spend all or part of their life histories in freshwater. (*Conservation Act 1987*)

functional planning. Strategic assessment for a single function of the Department over a wide geographic area. For example, wild animal control plans for a conservancy, or conservancy recreation strategies. (*Management Planning Guidelines, DOC*)

General Policy. is a guide for decisions based on general approaches. General policy is used to mean a statement, directive or guide adopted by the Minister of Conservation, or the New Zealand Conservation Authority following a statutory process under the Conservation Act, National Parks Act, Reserves Act, Wildlife Act, Marine Reserves Act, Wild Animals Control Act, Marine Mammals Protection Act and the New Zealand Walkways Act. Conservation management strategies are required to implement statements of General Policy. (*Management Planning Guidelines, DOC*)

habitat. The environment in which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned. For example, the habitat of the blue duck consists of swift water with an abundance of freshwater insects.

hapu. Sub-tribe. *(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)*

historic area. An area of land that contains an inter-related group of historic places, some or all of which are registered and forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand.

(Historic Places Act 1993)

historic place. A generic term defined by the Historic Places Act 1993, as any land, building or structure that forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand.

(Historic Places Act 1993)

historic resource. An historic place, defined under the terms of the Historic Places Act 1993. Includes any interest in an historic place.

(Historic Places Act 1993)

historic values. The value of historic areas, places or resources (see above).

integrated management. The management of activities, existing or potential, in a manner which ensures that each is in harmony with the other and that priorities are clear.

intrinsic value. This is a concept which regards the subject under consideration as having value in its own right independent of any value placed on it by humans. Elements of intrinsic value with respect to ecosystems can include their integrity, form, uniqueness, functioning interrelationships and resilience. (refer biodiversity)

implementation provisions. Specific statements on how objectives are to be achieved which may include criteria for assessment. *(Management Planning Guidelines, DOC)*

interpretation. Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of national or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media. It occurs in the vicinity of the subject and is designed to stimulate visitor interest, increase understanding and promote support for conservation.

iwi. Tribe, people. *(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)*

iwi authority. The authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so. *(Resource Management Act 1991)*

kainga, kaika. Village, settlement, home *(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)*

kaitiakitanga. The exercise of guardianship. In relation to a resource this includes the ethic of stewardship based on the nature of the resource itself. *(Resource Management Act 1991)*

kaupapa. An abstract word with many meanings. Within the Department it is generally used in the sense of vision, philosophy, cause, idea or theme.

land managed/administered by the department or areas managed/administered by the Department. All land held, managed or administered under the Conservation Act and other acts administered by the Conservation Department (refer First Schedule of the Conservation Act 1987).

lease. An agreement which gives the lessee the right to exclusive possession of the land with the intention of conferring an interest in land as opposed to giving a personal privilege. *(Draft Concessions Policy, November 1992)*

licence. Grant of a non-exclusive interest in land or a grant of permission to undertake an activity which does not require an interest in land. *(Conservation Act Amendments 1993)*

mana whenua. Customary rights and authority over land (Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991) authority exercised by an iwi or hapu in an identified area. *(Resource Management Act 1991)*

mana awa. Customary rights and authority over rivers.

mana moana. Customary rights and authority over sea.

management planning. The process of setting and confirming objectives for the management of natural and historic resources, and recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes, and specifying the actions and resources necessary to achieve those objectives. *(Management Planning Guidelines, DOC)*

marginal strip. Land reserved from disposition by the Crown under the Land Act 1948 and the Conservation Act 1987 along the foreshore, waterways greater than 3 metres wide (when not used by the Electricity Corporation of New Zealand for generating electricity) and lakes. This term also refers to land acquired in exchange for marginal strips. Marginal strips are 20 metres wide unless a reduction of width has been approved by the Minister. For more information refer to the Act. *(Conservation Act 1987)*

natural character. The qualities of an area taken together give it a particular, recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature.

natural resources. Include plants and animals and their habitats, landscape and landforms, geological features, and systems of interacting living organisms, and their environment. *(Conservation Act 1987)*

natural values. The value of natural resources (see above). *(Conservation Act 1987)*

nature conservation. The preservation and protection of the natural resources of New Zealand having regard to their intrinsic values and having special regard to indigenous flora and fauna, natural ecosystems and landscape. *(Conservation Act 1987)*

Nga Whenua Rahui Kawenata. Agreement entered into over Maori land or Crown land held under a Crown lease by Maori to protect that land either under the Conservation Act or Reserves Act.

New Zealand Conservation Authority, (NZCA). A national body of 12 appointed members established under section 6a of the Conservation Act 1987. Amongst other functions, it has the statutory responsibility for approving General Policy, conservation management strategies, plans and national park management plans. *(Conservation Act 1987)*

objectives. Statements of intended results. These can be broad or narrow in scope and should be accompanied by implementation provisions. *(Management Planning Guidelines, DOC)*

pa. Fortified village, or more recently any village *(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)*

permit. A written order giving permission to act, especially for entry into a place (Concise Oxford Dictionary).
(Draft Concessions Policy, November 1992)

Protected Natural Areas Programme (PNAP). A programme which aims to establish a network of reserves and other protected natural areas which is representative of the full range of New Zealand's natural diversity. Ecological districts are surveyed and areas identified which best represent the diversity of their natural features. These are termed recommended areas for protection or RAPs.

preservation. In relation to resources under the Conservation Act 1987, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of their intrinsic value.

(Conservation Act 1987)

protection. In relation to resources under the Conservation Act 1987, means their maintenance, as far as is practicable, in their current state but includes restoration to some former state and augmentation, enhancement or expansion.

(Conservation Act 1987)

rare. Species with small world populations that are not at present endangered or vulnerable but are at risk.

*(Setting priorities for the conservation of New Zealand's
 threatened plants and animals, DOC)*

recommended area for protection (RAP). A place identified as a priority for protection because it contains the best example(s) of its type or class of natural ecosystem and/or landscape in an ecological district.

*(NZ Protected Natural Areas Programme, NZ Biological Resources Centre
 Publication No. 6)*

Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS). The ROS is a system for classifying outdoor experiences. It identifies opportunities along a continuum from urban to wilderness. It has eight main categories and provides both an inventory and planning process.

regional councils. Locally elected councils which have primary responsibility for management of water, soil, geothermal resources and pollution control. They are also responsible for regional aspects of hazard mitigation, soil conservation and hazardous substances.

regional plans. The purpose of these is to assist regional councils to carry out their functions. They are designed to address specific resource management issues for which regional councils are responsible. Councils must decide what regional plans they will prepare. Plans may cover matters such as water management, soil conservation, natural hazard mitigation and air pollution. (refer regional policy statement).

(Resource Management Act 1991)

regional policy statements. These set out the objectives for managing resources and are prepared by regional councils in accordance with the Resource Management Act 1987. They provide the overall framework for achieving sustainable management in the region and are binding on regional and district plans.

*(Resource Management Act 1987, Regional Policy Statements and Plans,
Ministry for the Environment.)*

rehabilitation. To return a degraded ecosystem or population to an undegraded condition, which may be different from its original condition. (IUCN 1991)

restoration. Means returning a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state by reassembly, reinstatement and/or removal of extraneous additions. (ICOMOS 1993)

Restricted Coastal Activity. Means any discretionary activity or non-complying activity, which is stated by a Regional coastal plan (prepared by a regional council) to be a restricted coastal activity, and for which the Minister of Conservation is the consent authority.

(Resource Management Act 1991)

review. In relation to conservation management strategies and management plans means to reconsider objectives and policies and following a process of public comment to approve a new strategy or plan, having regard to increased knowledge or changed circumstances.

(Conservation Act 1987)

rohe. Boundary, tribal region

(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)

runanga. Assembly, council

(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)

specially protected areas. Conservation parks, wilderness areas, ecological areas, sanctuary areas, watercourse areas as detailed in Part IV of the Conservation Act 1987.

species recovery plan. A plan of action intended to halt the decline of a threatened species and increase its population.

stewardship area. A conservation area that is not a marginal strip, watercourse, conservation park, ecological area, sanctuary area or wilderness area, or land in which an interest is held under the Conservation Act 1987 for one or more of these purposes.

(Conservation Act 1987)

sustainability, ecological. The use of the components of an ecosystem in ways that allow for the perpetuation of the character and natural processes of that ecosystem.

sustainable management. Managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations, (b) safe-guarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems, and (c) avoiding, remedying, or initiating any adverse effects of activities on the environment. This definition is specific to the Resource Management Act 1991.

(Resource Management Act 1991)

taking. In relation to plants this includes breaking, cutting, destroying, digging up, gathering, plucking, pulling up and removing of the plant. In relation to fish it means fishing.

(Conservation Act 1987)

tangata whenua. People of a given place (Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991) in relation to a particular area, means the iwi, or hapu that holds mana whenua over that area

(Resource Management Act 1991)

taonga. Prized possession, property.

(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991).

territorial authorities/councils. These terms are used to refer to district and city councils. These are locally elected bodies responsible, amongst other things, for land use planning under the Resource Management Act 1991.

threatened, (species). A term used to mean vulnerable or more loosely used to include rare, vulnerable and endangered species. (See also, Appendix 2).

tikanga Maori. Maori customary values and practices. (*Resource Management Act 1991*)

traditional site. A place or site that is important by reason of its historical significance or spiritual or emotional association with Maori. (*Historic Places Act 1980*)

true right/true left. The right/left bank of a river when facing downstream.

urupa. Cemetery, burial ground. (*Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*)

visions. Statements describing what the Conservancy, and different places within it will ideally be like in the future. These statements are a reflection of the views of enunciated by the people of the region as expressed prior to and following preparation of the CMS. They provide a long-term aim for management.

vulnerable. A plant or animal believed likely to move into the endangered category in the near future if the causal factors continue. (*Red Data Book of New Zealand 1981*)

wahi tapu, waahi tapu. Sacred place. (*Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*)

walkway. An area of land that has been declared a walkway or an area of land over which a walkway has been established under the New Zealand Walkways Act. (*New Zealand Walkways Act 1990*)

water conservation order. Made to recognise and sustain those characteristics of a water body which afford outstanding amenity or intrinsic values. They are made by the Minister for the Environment on the recommendation of a special tribunal and/or the Planning Tribunal. (*Resource Management Act 1991*)

wetland. Permanent or intermittently wet areas, shallow water and land-water margins. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers, and lake margins.

whakatauki. Maori proverb.

whanau. Family.

(Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991)

wild animal. Deer, chamois, thar, wallaby and opossum; goats and pigs that are living in a wild state. Except for deer kept in captivity for farming, does not include animals kept in captivity or rats, mice, rabbits, stoats, ferrets or weasels.

Refer to the Act for the legal definition.

(Wild Animal Control Act 1977)

wilding pines. Introduced pine species on or threatening lands managed by the Department. Planted in some areas for erosion control purposes but they have since spread beyond the original planted areas, and are displacing native plant species, particularly in tussock grassland areas.